

۸ لاپورد یربراکی امنهار

DrupalTM

USER GUIDE

۸ لاپوردی ربراک ی امنهار

تسرف

i. همدم	00
i.1. راشتنا زوجم	00
i.2. فاده و بطاخم	00
i.3. یدلن امزاس	00
i.4. تال کشم شرازگ	00
i.5. امنهار نی ادواق	00
i.6. امنهار ویرانس	00
1. لاپورد کرد	1
1.1. اوتحم تیری دم متسیس کی ناونع هب لاپورد: موهفم	1
1.2. اهلنوزفا: موهفم	3
1.3. اهللاق: موهفم	4
1.4. اهاعی زوت: موهفم	5
1.5. هدادع اونا: موهفم	6
1.6. لاپورد هژورپ: موهفم	7
1.7. لاپورد زوجم: موهفم	9
2. تیاس یحارط	11
2.1. بللق کی رد اهلهی حان: موهفم	11
2.2. تیاس حرط یزیراهم انرب	12
2.3. یی اوتحم ی اهاتی دوجوم و اهدهلیف: موهفم	14
2.4. رالوژام ی اوتحم: موهفم	16
2.5. یی اوتحم راتخاس یزیراهم انرب	17
2.6. یراتساری و راکشدرگ: موهفم	20
3. بصلن	22
3.1. رورس ی اهزای نشیپ: موهفم	22
3.2. ی فاضا ی اهرابا: موهفم	23
3.3. بصلن ی ارب ی زاس اهدام آ	25
3.4. بصلن دن ی آرف ی ارجا	28
4. تیاس هی اپ ی دن برکیپ	35
4.1. Concept: Administrative Overview	35
4.2. Editing Basic Site Information	38
4.3. Installing a Module	40
4.4. Uninstalling Unused Modules	41
4.5. Configuring User Account Settings	44
4.6. Configuring the Theme	47
5. هدهاس هحفص تیری دم	52
5.1. Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs	52
5.2. Creating a Content Item	53
5.3. Editing a Content Item	55
5.4. Editing with the In-Place Editor	57
5.5. Designating a Front Page for your Site	59

5.6.	Concept: Menu	61
5.7.	Adding a Page to the Navigation	62
5.8.	Changing the Order of Navigation	65
6.	ی او ت ح م ر ا ت خ اس می ظ ن ت	68
6.1.	Adding a Content Type	68
6.2.	Deleting a Content Type	73
6.3.	Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type	75
6.4.	Concept: Reference Fields	80
6.5.	Concept: Taxonomy	81
6.6.	Setting Up a Taxonomy	83
6.7.	Adding a Reference Field	88
6.8.	Concept: Forms and Widgets	91
6.9.	Changing Content Entry Forms	92
6.10.	Concept: View Modes and Formatters	96
6.11.	Changing Content Display	97
6.12.	Concept: Image Styles	100
6.13.	Setting Up an Image Style	101
6.14.	Concept: Responsive Image Styles	105
6.15.	Concept: Text Formats and Editors	106
6.16.	Configuring Text Formats and Editors	107
7.	یر بر ا ک ی ا ه ب اس ح ت یر یم	109
7.1.	Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions	109
7.2.	Concept: The User Account	110
7.3.	Creating a Role	112
7.4.	Creating a User Account	113
7.5.	Assigning Permissions to a Role	117
7.6.	Changing a User's Roles	119
7.7.	Assigning Authors to Content	122
8.	ا ه ک ا ل ب	125
8.1.	Concept: Blocks	125
8.2.	Creating A Custom Block	125
8.3.	Placing a Block in a Region	128
9.	ز ا ه د ا ف ت س ا ب ت س ر ه ف د ا ج ی ا Views	131
9.1.	Concept: Uses of Views	131
9.2.	Concept: The Parts of a View	132
9.3.	Creating a Content List View	134
9.4.	Duplicating a View	138
9.5.	Adding a Block Display to a View	143
10.	د و خ ت ی اس ن د ر ک ه ن ا ب ز د ن چ	149
10.1.	Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation	149
10.2.	Adding a Language	150

10.3.	Configuring Content Translation	152
10.4.	Translating Content	155
10.5.	Translating Configuration	157
11.	دوخ تیاس ی زاسی شرافس و هعسوت	161
11.1.	Finding Modules	161
11.2.	Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode	166
11.3.	Downloading and Installing a Module from <i>Drupal.org</i>	169
11.4.	Finding Themes	172
11.5.	Downloading and Installing a Theme from <i>Drupal.org</i>	175
11.6.	Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files	179
11.7.	Concept: Development Sites	182
11.8.	Making a Development Site	183
11.9.	Using Composer and Git to Download Files	186
11.10.	Deploying New Site Features	189
11.11.	Synchronizing Configuration Versions	192
12.	تالگشم لح و یریگی شیپ	195
12.1.	Concept: Cache	195
12.2.	Clearing the Cache	196
12.3.	Concept: Data Backups	198
12.4.	Concept: Log	200
12.5.	Concept: Status Report	201
13.	یراده گن و تی نم	203
13.1.	Concept: Cron	203
13.2.	Configuring Cron Maintenance Tasks	204
13.3.	Concept: Security and Regular Updates	206
13.4.	Keeping Track of Updates	208
13.5.	Updating the Core Software	209
13.6.	Updating a Module	211
13.7.	Updating a Theme	215
14.	رخ آنخس	218
14.1.	Connecting with the Community	218
14.2.	Getting Support	220
14.3.	Learning More	221
	ناگژاو	223
	هی امن	232
	همی مض	242
A.	Guide-Wide Attributions	242

تأحيضوت هك — ديزادنيب ##### هب يهاغن ديه اوخب دياش ديزادريپلي عملاطم هب هك روط نيمه لماش اريرتشيب تاينئزج هك يتاعووضوم هب دنويپ و امنهار نيا تاخالطصا زا كي ره هرابرد رصتخم دهلي م هئارا، دنوشي م.

ناگدننكاتكراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش هتشون

i.4. تال كشم شرازگ

فاده

هل مچ زا، امنهار نيا اب لكشم كي شرازگ:

- دن تسين درادناتسا ياهويش هب هك هتسد نآ اي تسردان تاخالطا
- دننكلي من راک هك يي اهم اگ
- دن تسين يكي نتم ي اوتحم اب هك عووضوم اب طبترم ريواصت
- موهفمان هتشون
- دهد حوضوت دن اوتلي م نتم زا رتهب ريواصت هك يي اهاج
- ححص تاخ حوضوت دوجو مدع
- اهان آ دوجو مدع و زاي ن دروم يش ناد ي اهزاي نشيپ
- يشي امن و يش راگن، يروتسد ي اهاطخ
- اطخ ي اهدنويپ

اهام اگ

1. دنشاب هدش حرطم لكشم لماش هك يتاعووضوم اي عووضوم زا ي رادرباتش ادداي
2. [تسا نآ تخاس نامزونكا، ديرادن يربراك باسح رگا] [Drupal.org](#) هب دورو
3. [User Guide issues ## Drupal.org](#) هجفص هب هعجارم
4. دشاب هدشن شرازگ يرگيد درف طسوت نونكا مه امش لكشم هك دينك لصاح ناني مطا:
 - امش عووضوم اي آ دني ببات دينك شويپ ار *Summary* نوتس، دراد دوجو زاب *issue* دنچ اهنت رگا كي لك اب ديناوتلي م هك ديناوخب ار *issue* دنچ ات دشاب مزال تسا نكمم. ريخ اي دنهلي م ششويپ ار دينك عملاطم ار نآ *Summary* نوتس رد دوجوم دنويپ يور رب
 - هك ي عووضوم ناو نع اي دوخ رظن دروم هژاودي لك ندرک دراو اب، دشاب ينالوط، زاب *issue* تسرهف رگا *issue* دادعت ندش رتمك هب *Search* يور كي لك و *Search for* هب عج لخد دراد رارق اجنآ رد لكشم رد لكشم هك ديزادريپ *issue* عملاطم هب اي هدرک يسررب ار لكشم هصالخ هاگنآ. دينك تردابم تساجنآ

5. کیلک *Create a new issue* یور، تساهدشن شرازگ نونکا مه امش رظن دروم لکش م هک دی تفایرد رگا دینک رپ ریزق باطم ار لکش م شرازگ و دینک

+

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Title	Short summary of the problem you found	Instructions in "Adding a Content Type" do not work
Category	Type of issue being reported	Bug report
Version	Version of the guide you found the problem in	8.x-0.x-dev
Issue summary	Details of the problem you found	In the "Adding a Content Type" topic, in step 3, when I clicked <i>Save</i> , I got the following error message: ...

1. شرازگ رد ریزتاعالطا هک دیبای نانیمطا و دیناوخب ددجم ار دیاهدرك دراو هک *Title* و *Issue summary* :تساهتفرگ رارق امش
 - دیاهدرك ادیپ هک یلکش م زالماک حیضوت کی
 - تساهدش ادیپ نآرد لکش م هک یتاعوضوم ای عوضوم مان
 - [تسین یسیلگنا رگا] دیناوخلم نآهب ار امنهار هک ینابز
 - لامش ار لکش م هک یتاحفص ای ححفص هب دنویپ، دیناوخلم یرگید تیاس یور ار امنهار رگا دنوشوم
2. دینک کیلک *Save* یور *issue* داچای یارب.
3. اب، تساوخ امش زایرتشیب تاعالطا هژورپ ناریدم زایکی رگا. دینزب رس *issue* هب زور دنچ یط دیدهخساپ نآهب هاگدیذ زا هدافتسا.

ناگدننکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش هتشون

i.5. امنهار نیادعواق

اهزاینشیپ و تایشرف

دیرگیلم رظن رد ار ریزی اهزاینشیپ و تایشرف امنهار نیادعواق

- رتشیب تایشرف یارب؛ تساهدش یدنباهقبط تاعوضوم ساسا رب امنهار نیادعواق [i.3. #####](#) دن تسه [#####](#) تمسق کی لامش تاعوضوم یرایسب. دینک دهاشم ار ["#####"](#)

شناد ی خرب. دزادریلوم یلصا عوضوم رتهب کرد یارب یبناج تاعوضوم ریاس ندرک تسرهف هب هک
رتشیب تایئزج یارب؛ تسارظن دم زین دوشلیمن هدادش شوپ هک هنی مزاشیپ
#i.2, "##### #
#####"
دینک هدهاشم ار

- دیاب هک یی اهراک ینعی، دنزادریلوم ##### ندرک تسرهف هب نیرمت تاعوضوم یرایسب
دیده ماجنا دوختیاس یورنیرمت نیاندا ماجنا زالبق
- هاگشورف یارب تیاس کی داجی رب ینتبم ییویرانس اب طبترم، تیاس یاهزاینشیپ تاصخشم
[دینک هدهاشم ار "##### i.6, "##### #"
رتشیب تایئزج یارب] تسایزواشک تالوصحم
هتشاد دای هب اردوخ زاین دروم تارییغت دیاب اما، دیزاس قبطنم دوخ ویرانس اب دیناوتلیم ار اهنیرمت
دشاب قبطنم نیرمت کی اب امش تیاس رگا دیشاب
- ینمض زاینشیپ کی، "##### 3.4, "##### #"
زاسپ یدربراک تاعوضوم مامت یارب
دیوش نآ دراو یلصا یربراک باسح اب و دیشاب هدرک بصن وراوتحم تییری دم رازفالمن دیاب: دراد دوجو
یاهزوجم مامت ضرفافشیپ تروص هب هک، دی اهدرک داجی تیاس بصن ماگنه هک یربراک باسح دننام
[دراد ار مزال
- زاینشیپ شناد دیاب، دینک ارچا نیرمت کی رد ار اهلاگ مامت و هعلاطم بیترت هب ارتاعوضوم مامت رگا
دیشاب هدرک هعلاطم زین ارتیاس یاهزاینشیپ و

ینتم دعاوق

دنهدش هدافتسا امنهار نیانتم رد ریز دعاوق

- یارب همادا رد ارشیامیپ تمسق. تسامش تیاسبو یلصا یناشن ینعم هب *example.com* یناشن
دینک هدهاشم دوختیاس یلخادی اهلیناشن هرابرد رتشیب تایئزج
- *Save* یور کیلک: دننام دیآلم *italics* تروص هب دینیبلیم دوختیاس یربراک طبار رد هک ینتم
یلبق عوضوم کی رد هک ینتم هن، تسایلصا رازفالمن رد دوجوم نتم دروم رد اهنت نیان
:دینیبب یلمعلاروتسد نینچ تسانکم، شیریو هرابرد یعوضوم رد، هنومن یارب. تساهدش دراو
About اما، دشاب کیلاتی تروص هب تسانکم *Edit* [دینک کیلک About هحفص یالاب رد *Edit* یور
[تسا هدش داجی یلبق عوضوم کی رد About هحفص هک ارچ تسین
- دنبابیلم شیامن *italics* تروص هب دیدج تاحالطصا و اهالیاف مان، اهلیناشن
- دبایلم شیامن *monospace* تروص هب دوش دراو نامرف [طخ طبحم رد روتسد بلق رد دیاب هک ینتم
:دننام
`drush cr`
- هک [دوشلیم هدافتسا اهالیافی زاسا هریخذ یارب یلحم دروم رد هشیمه *directory* همک، امنهار نیان رد
[دننکلیم هراشا نآ هب *folder* مان اب دارفا یخرب

ششیامیپ

ی تی ری دم طبار رد حفص دنچ ای کی هب هک تسای زاین، امنهار نیاردی نیرمت تاعوضوم رثکا مچنا یارب رازفالمرن هک ینامز دینی بب اهال عمل اروت سد رد نیاب هباشم یزیچ تسای کمم. دینک هعجارم دوختیاس :تثشاد دی ه اوخ یرت هب کرد دینک بصن ار

دیورب (*admin/structure/taxonomy*) *Manage_# ### #####_Structure > Taxonomy* ی تی ری دم یونم رد

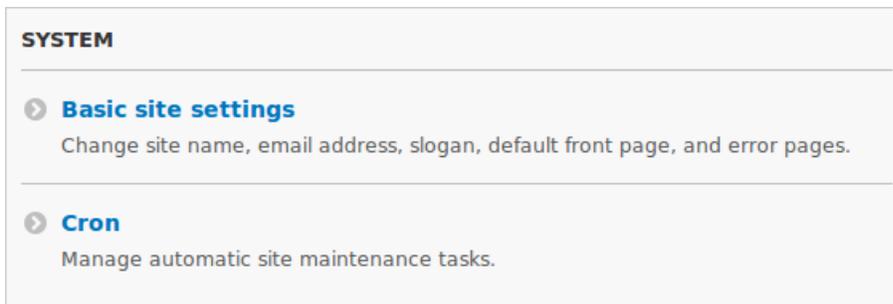
نی و دیراد بصن ار **Toolbar** هوزفا هک دنراذگی لم نیارب ار ضرف نیاری ظن ششیامیپی اهال عمل اروت سد ریسم هب دیاب *Manage* هنی زگی یورکی لک زا سپ حفص یالاب یونم راون رد هک تسای نیای نعم هب هونم *Structure* زا تسای ترابع حفص یناشن ریسم نیارد و دیورب *Taxonomy* سپس *http://example.com/admin/structure/taxonomy* دشاب *http://example.com* امش تیاس هیاب یناشن رگا.



دینکلی م هدهاشم یرگی دهنومن اج نیارد:

دیورب (*admin/config/system/site-information*) *Manage_# ### #####_Configuration > System > Site information* ی تی ری دم یونم رد

و دینک ادیپ ار *Configuration_# #####_System* و *Manage* یورکی لک زا سپ، هونم نیارد و دینک کی لک *Site information* ریسم رد اهتنا رد. دینک کی لک *http://example.com/admin/config/system/site-information* رارق دیری گلی م رارق *information*



رد "Add" ی اهه کم د زا ی رای سب، دینکلی م هدا فتسا ی تی ری دم درادن تسای بلق زا رگا: رگی د هتکن کی ی اوتخم ندوزفا هم کد *admin/content* رد، هونم یازب. دنوشلی م هدا ش یامن + تمالع اب نیای تی ری دم طبار تقیقح رد و تسای بلق رب ینتبم لمع نی، هچرگا. دبایلی م ش یامن *Add new content* + تروص هب دیج

رد سب. دوشلی من هدناوخ ناوخه ح ف ص کی طسوت امزلا، هنومن یارب تسین همکد یور نتم زا یتمسق دوشلی من یاهراشا اههمکد یور + تمالع هب، امنهار نی

اهامرف ندرکرپ

رثکا رد. دینک رپ ار مرف کی نآ رد دیاب هک دنتسه یمماگ لماش امنهار نی ی نیرمت تاعوضوم زا یرایسب رارق نآ یاهدلیف رد دیاب هک اهرادقم زا یلودج هارمه هب، دوشلی م هدادش یامن مرف زا ریوصت کی، دراوم ارتیاس تاعالطا هک، دوشلی م عورش ریز تروص هب هک دینیبب ار یلودج تسانکم، هنومن یارب. دیهد

رتسایس *Configuration > _System_ > Site information (admin/config/system/site-information)* رد نآ هب طوبرم مرف یارب دهلیم حیضوت (*information*).

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Site name	Name of your site	Anytown Farmers Market

مان کی. دیهد رارق نآ رد ار دوختیاس مان و هدرک ادیپ مرف رد ار *Site name* دلیف، لودج نیازا هداقتسایارب هاگشورف یارب تیاسبو کی داجی ویرانس هب هک "#Anytown Farmers Market" زا تساترابع هنومن رتشیب تایئزج یارب تساطبترم امنهار نیارد هراشا یزرواشک [#### i.6, "#####"](#) دینک هدهاشم ار

ناگدننگاتکراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش شیرایو و هتشون

امنهار ویرانس i.6.

ورشیپ هژورپ ویرانس. تسارثوم رایسب تیاسبو یعقاو هژورپ کی هدی، امنهار نیاهعلاطم ماگنه دوشلی م لماش ار طبترم یاهدنویپ و میهافم زا یاهعومجم

لحم هرابرد تاعالطاشیریامن دنمزاین تیاس. دیتسه یزرواشک رازاب کی یارب تیاسبو دیلوت للاح رد امش ی تسرهف دراد زاین نی نچمه. نآ هچخیرات هرابرد **About** هحفص کی هارمه هب تسارازاب یراک یاهتاعاس و دامن کی هلمچ زان دنشاب دوخ مالقا شیرایو هب رداق دیاب ناگدنشورف. دهدش یامن ار ناگدنشورف زا دنناوتب دیاب تیاس ناگدننگاه جارم. دینک لاسرا ار دوخ یاهلامعلاروتسد دنناوتب و ریوصت ای ارتسا دوچوم رازاب رد هک مادک ره زاین دروم هیلوا داوم و هدرک شیرامیپ فل تخم یاهلامعلاروتسد نیب ویلصا تاحفص نیاربانب، دینکلیم تبحص یرگید نابز هب امش تیاس ناربراک یخرپ. دینک صخشم و دنراد همجرت هب زاین ناگدنشورف

ناگدننگاتکراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش شیرایو و هتشون

ل اپورد کرد 1. ل صرف

اوتحم تیری دم متسیسی کی ناووع هب ل اپورد :موهفم 1.1

تسیچ اوتحم تیری دم متسیسی

فدح و شیری و، راشتنا، ندوزفا هزاجا ناربراک هب هک تسای رازفالمرن (CMS) اوتحم تیری دم متسیسی کی یزی مور هنی ار ای تل بت، دن مشوه یشوگ رد دوجوم بو رگوروم زا هدافتسا اب ار تیاسبو کی اوتحم هک یاهن ایاری ورن آیهات پی رکسا و دوشلی م هتشون تی پی رکسا نابزکی هب رازفالمرن، الوم عم. دهلی م هداداهگی اپ رد الوم عم تیاسبو تامیظنت و اوتحم. ددرگلی م بصن، تسای رازفالمرن رورس بو و هداداهگی اپ ار زاین دروم تاعالطای پی رکسا، دوشلی م رورسبو هب هک یاهحفص تس اوخرد ره یازا هب و دنوشلی م هریخذ ای دن تسه CMS زا یوزج هک CSS، تی پی رکسا اوچ، ریوصت یاهالی اف [#####] و هداداهگی اپ زا دوش هتخاس رظن دروم هحفص ات دن کلی م بی کرت [دناهدش دراو نآ هب

هدش هتشون نآ هب هک سی و نهام انرب نابز، دوشلی م ارچا نآ یور CMS هک یلم اعلمتسیسی بی کرت اب دن کلی م شزادرب ار تی فایرد یاهتس اوخرد هک یورسبو و دن کلی م هریخذ ار نآ تاعالطای هک یاهداداهگی اپ هداداهگی اپ، یچاپ رورسبو، سکونیل لم اعلمتسیسی بی کرت نیرتال وادتم؛ دوشلی م هتخانش ##### مان دوشلی م هتخانش LAMP Stack مان اب PHP سی و نهام انرب نابز و MySQL

تسیچ ل اپورد

ندوزفا ناکما هک رالوژام یحارط هارمه هب، تسای LAMP هتشپ ساسا رب ریذپاطعنا CMS کی ل اپورد فدح و بصن اب ار تیاسبو رهاظ ریغ ناکما و ##### فدح و بصن اب ار اهاتیل باق فدح و یارب PHP یاهت پی رکسا لماش، دوشلی م هتخانش هتسه مان اب هک، ل اپورد هی اپ دولناد. دراد ##### تی پی رکسا اوچ یاهالی اف رایسب و اهبالاق و اهونوزفا یخره هارمه هب، تسای CMS هی لوا یاهتیل باق یارجا دولناد Drupal.org تیاسبو قیروط زا دن اوتلی م یفاضای اهبالاق و اهونوزفا زا رایسب. ریوصت و CSS و دنوش

دوش هدافتسا زین یرگی دیاهرتسب رد دن اوتلی م نینچمه ل اپورد:

- سکونیل یاحب، دشاب شاتنی کم ای زودنی و دن اوتلی م لم اعلمتسیسی
- یچاپ ای اجب دشاب IIS ای Nginx دن اوتلی م رورسبو
- دن نام نآ رب نینت بم یاهن یزگی ای MySQL ای اجب دشاب SQLite ای PostgreSQL دن اوتلی م هداداهگی اپ ای Percona یا MariaDB

یاهت پی رکسا، هچرگا؛ دنوش هدافتسا دن اوتلی م زین هداداهگی اپ و اهورسبو، اهال م اعلمتسیسی ریاس دن اوتلی م یقاب ریغ لباق ریغ هک دن تسه PHP نابز هب دن کلی م هدافتسا نآ زا رازفالمرن هک

تسیچ ل اپورد زا هدافتسالیال د

باختنا فل تخم ین ابزیم ی اهلسیورس و CMS ی اهتسرب نیب زا دین اوتلیم، تیاسبو کی تخاس ماگنه دن اهدش رکذ لیل دنج اجنی. دیربب شیپ ن از هدافتسارنودب ار تیاس ای دی زاسب ار دوخ CMS، دینک دنشاب رثوم تسارنکم ل اپورد باختنا ی ارب هک

- راکنی دین اوتلیم ی تحار هب و تسین ی راوشد راک HTML اتسیا تاحفص اب کچوک تیاس کی تخاس دن نام ی اهتسرب هک دراد زاین یرتشیب هی لوا نامزه ب الوم عم CMS اب تیاس کی یی ارب. دیهد م اجنار اهل ی ایف اب راک ی راوشد ی گچراپ کی، رتتمک یراک هبرجت اب ناگدنسیون ی ارب نیال ان شیری و دوشایم ل ماش ار هداده اگی اپ رته دیچی پ اهتسیل باق زا هدافتسارنکم و رتگرزب ی اهتسیا رد اتسیا.
 - هک دنراد دوجو ین ابزیم تامدخ و اهتسرب، ونومن ی ارب؛ دنتسه هروظنم صاخ CMS ی اهرازفالمرن ی خرب فرط زا، ل اپورد. دی زاسب ار تیوضع اگشاب تیاسبو ای گال بو کی دین اوتلیم اهن آ زا هدافتسارن اب زا دیه اوخب دی اش دیراد ار هروظنم صاخ تیاس کی تخاس دصق رگا. تسار هروظنم همه CMS کی، رگی ددشاب هروظنم صاخ طیارش زا جراخ امش تیاس رگا، ل اح نی اب؛ دینک هدافتسار هروظنم صاخ CMS کی دینک هدافتسار هروظنم همه CMS کی زا هک تسار رتهب.
 - دن نام هروظنم همه CMS کی زا هدافتسار، هچرگا. دی آیم باسح هب ی بل اج راک دوخ CMS رازفالمرن تخاس ی اب اسح دن نام CMS کی رد هی ای اهتسیل باق هک ارچ، تسای بوخ باختنا زاغ ا هطقن ن اونع هب ل اپورد ن ای لاس هارمه هب، دراد ل اب ند هب ار ناگدن ده عسوت شالت زا تعاس نارازه اوتحم تییری دم و یرب راک دن اهدش تیوقت ن آتینم و فرطرب ن آ ی اهلیع، ی سررب اهتسیل باق نی ا هک ی زارد.
 - ای دنتسه ناگیار هک مه ی خرب. دنراد هارمه هب ی تمیقن ارگ زوجم CMS ی رازفالمرن ی اهتسرب ی خرب ه دننک دودخ ی اهزوجم هب انب ار عسوت و رییغت هزاجا امش هب دنوشیم ل ماش ار ناگیار ی اهخسن ی رازفالمرن زوجم هک دینک هدافتسار ل اپورد دن نام ی اهتسرب زا دیه اوخب دی اش. دن دلیمن دوخ رد رتشیب تعالطای ارب. دبای عسوت ی گرزب یربراکه عماج طسوت و دشاب هتشان دین اهدننک دودخ
- دینک ده اش م ار [1.6, "#####: #####"](#) هطبار نی

طبترم تعاضوم

- [##### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [##### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [##### 1.4, "#####: #####"](#)
- [##### 1.6, "#####: #####"](#)

یتاعالطم عبانم

- [#####](#)
- [Drupal.org ##### "FAQ" \(#####\)](#)
- [Drupal.org ##### "#####"](#)

- [##### "##### #####"](#)
- [##### "#####"](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

[erdfisch](#) رد [MichaelLenahan](#) هارمه هب [Pronovix](#) رد [Kristof van Tomme](#) طسوت هدش شیری و و هت شون و [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

1.2. اهاهنوزفا: موهفم

زاینش پشناد

[##### 1.1, "#####: ##### # ##### # ##### #####"](#)

تسیچ هنوزفا

رتشیب یاهتیل باق ندوزفا اب هک تسا CSS و JavaScript# PHP یاهالیف زا یاهوعومچم هنوزفا کی، ار نآ ### اب و لاعف ار اهتیل باق نی دیناوتلوم هنوزفا ### اب. دشخ بلوم دوبهب ار تیاس درکل مع کاپ ار هنوزفا طسوت هدش لامع یاهلیدن برکی پ و هداد دشاب زاین دیش، فذح زا لب بق؛ دینک لاعفریغ تسا رتهب سپ، دراذگیل ریثات امش تیاس یلک درکل مع رب دوشلوم بصن هک یاهنوزفا ره. دینک فذح ار هدافتسا الابل یاهنوزفا

دنکلیم مهارف ار ریزی اهراک یارب زاین دروم یاهنوزفا لاپورد هتسه

- هنوزفا یارب راک یاهاب اسح تیری دم (User)
- یاهنوزفا نینچمه # Field UI و Field یاهنوزفا اهللیف و (Node) هنوزفا هیاپ یوتحم تیری دم. دراد دوجو زین اهللیف عون یارب.
- هنوزفا شیمای پ یونم تیری دم (Menu UI)
- یاهنوزفا دوجوم یاهلداد زا اهکال ب و اهلهک بش، اهت سرهف داچی (Views UI و Views)

ای هدرک دولناد [Drupal.org](#) ##### زا ار ##### ##### دیناوتلوم نینچمه ##### دیزاسب ار دوخ.

طبترم تاعوضوم

- [##### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)

- [#### 1.4, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 4.4, "Uninstalling Unused Modules"](#)
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#)
- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)

ی تاعل اطم ع بانم

[##### ##### ##### ## ##### ##### Drupal.org](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش هت شون

1.3. اه بل اق :م وه فم

زای نشی پ شن اد

[#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)

تسی چ بل اق

و ل اپورد هتسه .دن کلیم نییعت ار امش تیاس رهاظ و هولج هک تسا اهالیاف زا یاه عومجم بل اق کی هریخ ذی اهاداد ریاس و HTML نتم هل مچ زا ##### مادک دن کلیم نییعت امش تیاس رد لاعف یاه نوزفا شیا من امش تیاس تاحفص یور [] رگیدی اهالیاف ی رایسب و هدش یراذگراب ریواصت ،هداداه اگی اپ رد هدش .دوش هدافتسا اوتحم رهاظ یارب CSS شیا من هویش و HTML گت مادک زا دن کلیم صخشم بل اق .دوش هداد

طسوت ارثکا هک اه بل اق نی .تسا یل صرا عیزوت هارمه هب هی اپ بل اق دن چ لم اش ل اپورد هتسه رهاظ یور رب راک عورش یارب یبسانم باختنا دن اهدش یزاس اهدای پ و یحارط زارد نای لاس یط یرب راکاه عم اج دیوش انشآ هنی مزنیا رد ل اپورد میه افم اب دین اوتب ات دن تسه تیاس

هدرتسگ رایسب _ یلوپ هچ ناگیار هچ _ زین نآ ی اه بل اق رازاب سپ تسا هدش هتخان ش CMS کی ل اپورد تسا

دنراد دوج و اهاعی زوت زا یل صراعون ود

لامک و مامت ی اهاعی زوت

بی راجت، یه اگش ناد طیحم دن نام دی آی م باسح هب صاخ یل کشم لح یارب هدام آی اه ژورپ ی عی زوت نی نچ
عی زوت کی زا دن اوتلم امش، هنومن یارب. لی بق نی زا و یعامتجا، یاهناسر، ی عافت ناری ع، ی تلود
عی زوت کی ناو نع هب ار دوخ یی اهن لح هار ای دینک هدافتسا یزرواشک هاگشورف تخاس یارب دوجوم
دی رانگب نارگی د رای تخا رد.

اهاعی زوت ریاس

رامش هب ناگدن هداعسوت ای نازاسات یاس یارب یزاغ آ هطقن ناو نع هب دن اوتلم نی نچمه اهاعی زوت
دن آ.

طب ترم تا عوضوم

[#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

یتاع لاطم عبانم

[##### ##### ## Drupal.org](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

شیری و هانگادج ی اهوی ش هب کی ره هک، دنوشلم میسقت فل تخم عون راهچ هب امش تیس تاع الطا و هداد
زا دن ترابع عون راهچ نی. دن درگیلم یزاس اهیری خذ و همجرت [Diana Lakatos](#) و [Antje Lorch](#) طسوت هدش شیری و ["#####"](#) و ["##### # ##### — #####"](#).

1.5. هداد عاون ا: موهفم

دن تسه مادک ی اهداد عاون ا

شیری و هانگادج ی اهوی ش هب کی ره هک، دنوشلم میسقت فل تخم عون راهچ هب امش تیس تاع الطا و هداد
زا دن ترابع عون راهچ نی. دن درگیلم یزاس اهیری خذ و همجرت

اوتحم

عون نی. دنوش هداد شیمان تیس بطاخم هب دیاب هک لی بق نی زا و ریوصت، نتم تاع الطا
دنوش شیری و دن اوتلم اما دن تسه رادی اپ الوم عم تاع الطا

ی دن برکی پ

هدافتسا تیس تاع الطا نی عت یارب و تسا رادی اپ اما، دشابن اوتحم هک امش تیس تاع الطا
نی نتم ی اهت مسق الوم عم اما، دوش هداد شیمان بطاخم هب تسا نکمم زین اهاتقو یضعب. دوشلم
ی اهت مسق فالخ رب لی بق نی زا و تیس مان، اه دلیف بسچرب دن نام دوشلم لم اش ار یکچوک
دی سان شلم اوتحم ناو نع هب هک رت گرزب

تلح

ارجا cron ی اهت یلاعف هک ینامز نی رخ آ دن نام، امش تیس یلاعف تلح تقوم تعی بط هرابرد تاع الطا
دن اهدش.

تسشن

نیا. ی کوک تاعالطای تیاس هب اهنآ دورو دن نام، تیاس اب ناربراک ی دارفنا لماعت هرابرد تاعالطای تسای تقوم هک ارچ، تسای صوصخ هب تلایح کی

طبترم تاعوضوم

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"](#)
- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)
- [#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش سابتقا
#####

ل اپورد هژورپ: موهفم 1.6

زای نشیپ نشناد

[1.1, "#####: ##### # ##### # ##### # #####"](#)

تسیچ سروس نپوا و دازا رازفالمرن

ریغ زوجم کی تحت دازفا زای اعاماج طسوت هک تسای رازفالمرن (FOSS) سروس نپوا و دازا رازفالمرن ددرگلیم داجی دازا تروص هب دنزاسلیم ار هم انرب هک یی اهل ایف ##### دازا راشتنا اب و یراجت ##### [1.7, "#####: #####"](#)، ل اپورد رد هدش هدافتسای یراجت ریغ زوجم هرابرد رتشیب تاعالطای ارب دینک هدهاشم ار #####

تسیچ ل اپورد هژورپ

ی اعاموجم هارمه هب اوتحم تی ریدم متسیس هتسه هعسوت نآ فده هک تسای FOSS هژورپ کی ل اپورد هژورپ رد ار دوخ هی امرس و نامزهک ی دارفا. تسای هروظنم صاخ ی اعی زوت و تادن تسیم، اهامجرت، اهل لاق، اهانوزفا زای اوب یل و هدرتسگی اعاماج اتقیقح هک دنی آیم مه درگ ایند فل تخم طاقن زای دن هلیم رارق ل اپورد هژورپ دن کلیم راک کرتشم ی فده ی ارب هک دن تسه

دن نام دنه دلیم ماجنا ار یصاخ هفیظو مادک ره هک تساهدش لی کشت یکچوک یاهورگ زا یربراکاهعماج، لاپورد رازفالمرن تی نم اتیعضو یسررب، تادن تسم نتشون، لاپورد رب ینت بم رازفالمرن هعسوت هقطنم کی رد هک یی اهلی ایامه درگ و هژیو یاهدربراک یارب لاپورد زا هدافتسا، صاخ ینابز هب نآ همجرت دنه دلیم ماجنا هن ای لاس تروص هب یی ای فارغج.

یربراکاهعماج اب طابترا یرارقرب هرابرد رتشیب تاعالطا یارب [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#) و [#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#) دینک دهاشم ار.

تسیچ لاپورد نمجنا

نآ یربراکاهعماج و لاپورد هژورپ زا ینابی تشپ روظنم هب یعافتن اریغ نامزاس کی [#####](#) [#####](#) زا دن ترابع نآ یل صافاده. بتسا

- یناهج یاهدادرارق دافعنا
- [Drupal.org](#) یاهورس و اهت یاسبو زا یرادهگن
- بو مرفت لپ ناونع هب لاپورد اقا ترا
- لاپورد یاهلش زومآ و تالی صحت زا ینابی تشپ
- نآ فاده دربشیپ یارب یربراکاهعماج هب یلام یاهکمک ندرک مهارف
- فاده نیاروظنم هب یدقن یاهکمک یروآعج

طبترم تاعوضوم

- [#### 1.7, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)
- [#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#)

یتاعالطام عبانم

- [#####](#)
- [##](#) [###](#) [#####](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش هتشون

ل اپورد زوج م: موهفم 1.7

زاینشی پ شناد

[#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"#####](#)

تسی چ ل اپورد زوج م

هب (GPL v2) ۲ هخسن ون گ می موم ع ین اگمه زوج م تحت *Drupal.org* رد هدشی ین اب زیم ی اهالی اف مامت و ل اپورد GPL زوج م تحت ار *Drupal.org* ی اهله ژورپ رد دوجوم لی اف ره دی تسه دازآ امش هک ین عم نی ا هب .دنراد رارق دع ب بی کرت اب ار ل اپورد هتسه دین اوتلی م نی نچمه .دین ک رشن زاب و ری یغت ،هدافت سا ،دول ناد ۳ ای ۲ هخسن دین ک ارجا دشاب زوج م نی ا لمش هک یدک ره

دین ک یری گی پ ار دعاوق نی ا دی اب ل اپورد ناگدن نکات کراشم:

- ی اهالی اف هل مچ زا ،دنشاب دع ب هب GPL v2 زوج م تحت دی اب *Drupal.org* ی اهله ژورپ رد دوجوم ی اهالی اف مامت .لی بق نی ا زا و شلف ،یری وصت ،ت پی ر کس الواج PHP#
- هباشم زوج م تحت ار نی ا دی اب ،دین ک تی اری پک ار دوخ دک دنه اوخلم هک ل اپورد ناگدن نکات کراشم مامت .دنهد رارق ل اپورد اب
- تحت دی اب ،دی راد ار اهن آعی زوت دصق رگا .دنوشلم ق تشم یل صرا هژورپ زا ل اپورد ی اهلب لاق و اهله نوزفا .دین ک لمع دع ب هب GPL v2 زوج م
- زوج م تحت و دوشلم تی اری پک دوخ ناگدن نکات کراشم مان هب *Drupal.org* رد دوجوم ی اوتحم مامت .تسا 2.0 Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike license
- دن تسه دع ب هب GPL v2 زوج م تحت زین *Drupal.org* رد هنومن ی اهدک .

طب ترم تا عو وضوم

[#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

ی تا عل اطم ع بانم

- [#### "#####" ##Drupal.org](#)
- [#### "Drupal 8 LICENSE.txt" ## api.drupal.org](#)
- [#### ##### ##### ## ## ##](#)
- [#### ##### ##### ## ## ##](#)

- [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike license 2.0.](#)
- ["####" ## groups.drupal.org](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

طسوت هدش سابتقا [Diana Lakatos](#) رد [Pronovix](#) زا ["#####"](#).

طب ترم تا عوضوم

- [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)
- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#)

ی تا ع ل ا ط م ع بان م

- ["##### ##### ## #####" ## ##### ##### ##### Drupal.org](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

erdfish. رد [Michael Lenahan](#) و [John MacDonald](#) طسوت هدشاشیاری و و هت شون

تیس اس حرط ی زی راهم ان رب 2.2.

فده

لی ابوم و ی زی مور ی ا ه ل ن ای ا ر ی ا ه ر گ رورم ی ا رب ، تیس اس کی حرط و شی امی پی ی زی راهم ان رب

زای نشی پی شن اد

- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### # # #"](#)
- [#### i.6, "#####"](#)

اهم اگ

حرط ، هچرگا ؛ بی زادرب ن آ حرط ی زی راهم ان رب هب ، اوتحم دی لوت و تیس اس تخاس زا ل بق هک تسای بوخ هدی اوتحم دن چ هکنی زا سپ ای دشاب هت شاد ددجم ی نی بز اب هب زای ن دش ی ارجا زا ل بق تسان کم امش دراد ی گت سب هژورپ رد عف نی ذ دارفا شن کاو و هجدوب هب رما نی ا . دی هه رارق تیس اس لخاد هون من

1. هگشورف ویرانس رد . دینک هی هت ار دوش هداد ناشن بطاخم هب دی اب هک تا ع ل ا ط ا زا ی تسرهف : دوش لم اش اری ز دراوم دن اوتلی م تسرهف نی ا ، ی زرواشک

هچخیزات * تسرا زاب هاگشورف هک ییاهت عاس و اهزور * هشقن و یناشن هارمه هب هاگشورف لحم * *
 زا وحتسج لباق تسرهف * هدنشورف ره اب طبترم تایئزج * ناگدنشورف تسرهف * هاگشورف
 هاگشورف هب هدش هفاضا تالوصحم نیرخآ تسرهف * لوصحم ره تایئزج * تالوصحم

1. دنریگب رارق دیاب تیاس یاهت مسق مادک ردیتاعالطا هچ دیریگب میمصت

دنشاب تاحفص مامت رد دیاب هکیتاعالطا
 هدش هفاضا تالوصحم نیرخآ و یراک تعاس، یناشن

هدنشورف تایئزج تاحفص
 شدوخ هحفص رد هدنشورف ره هب طوبرم تاعالطا

لوصحم تایئزج تاحفص
 شدوخ هحفص رد لوصحم ره هب طوبرم تاعالطا

یلصا هحفص
 یراک تعاس و یناشن، هشقن، ناکم

هرابرد هحفص
 هاگشورف هچخیزات

ناگدنشورف تسرهف هحفص
 مادک ره هحفص هب دنویپ هارمه هب، ناگدنشورف زای تسرهف

تالوصحم تسرهف هحفص
 مادک ره هحفص هب دنویپ هارمه هب، تالوصحم زا وحتسج لباق تسرهف

2. تیاس نیب تاخم. تسرا رادروخرب یرتشیب تیمها زا تاعالطا مادک هحفص رد هک دیریگب میمصت
 شایمان یوتحم نیلوا هب بلغا دنکلیم هدافتسا کچوک یاهرگروم ریاس ای لیلیوم یاهلیشوگ زا هک
 دنزادریلیمن آهمادا یسررب هب الومعم و دنراد هجوت هحفص رد هتفای

3. یارب. دنریگب رارق تیاس یلصا شایمانیپ راون رد دیاب تاحفص نی زا کی مادک دیریگب میمصت
 دشاب تالوصحم و ناگدنشورف، هرابرد، یلصا هحفص لماش تسرا نکمم شایمانیپ راون، هنومن

4. گرزب و کچوک یاهرگروم رد ار نآ شایمان هوحن هک، دیریگب رظن رد هیلوا حرط کی هحفص ره یارب
 یاهرگروم زا تیاس ناگدننکدی دزاب رثکا هکنیا هب هجوت اب. دهلیم ناشن شایمان توافت هارمه هب
 ناوتب ات دینک یحارط کچوک یاههزادن اب ادتبا هک تسرا یبوخ هدی، دنکلیم هدافتسا رتاکچوک
 زاین هکنان و دبتشاد نه اوخ یسرتسد دوخ زاین دروم یوتحم هب دارفا رثکا درک لصاح نانیمطا
 دشاب هحفص یدومع شایمانیپ هب

ماچنا ار کچوک تاحالصا یخریب دیراد زاین هک دیبایرد تسرا نکمم، تاحفص نی یراتخاس حرط داجی رد
 یراک تعاس، یناشن تسرا رتهب رتاگرزب یاهرگروم یارب دیریگب میمصت تسرا نکمم، هنومن یارب. دیهد
 دیریگب میمصت دیش، رگید فرط زا. دنوش هداد شایمان هحفص یرانک راون رد تالوصحم نیرخآ تسرهف و
 دیهد شایمان هحفص ره یالاب رد یرتصتخم بلق رد ار یراک تعاس و یناشن، رتاکچوک یاهرگروم یارب
 دبای شایمان هحفص ره یاهتنا رد هدش هفاضا تالوصحم نیرخآ تسرهف اما

دیهد شایمانیپ ازفا ار دوخ کرد

2.5, "#####"

ناگدننکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدش هتشون

- [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)
- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)
- [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

Grant Dunham و Jennifer Hodgdon by طسوت هدش شیری و و هت شون

رال وژام ی اوتحم :موهفم 2.4

زای نشی پ شناد

- [#### 2.3, "##### # #####"](#)
- [#### 2.2, "##### # #"](#)

تسیچ رال وژام ی اوتحم؟

اوتحم نی اندرک #####، دوشلیم هریخند داده اگی اپ کی رد امش تیس ایس ی اوتحم هکنی اب هجوت اب لم اک هحفص کی ناو نع هب هکنی ایاجب، امش تیس ایس تاحفص ی خرب ی نع ی، دوب ده اوخ ی بولطم راک هاگشورف ویرانس رد، هنومن یارب. دن درگ دیلوت تیس ایس ی اوتحم ریاس زا راکدوخ تروص هب، دنوش شیری و لوصحم رگا. دیری گب رظن رد یاهن اگادج یی اوتحم هنی زگ لوصحم ره یارب دیه اوخب تسرا نکمم، یزرواشک وچتسج تیلباق و هیلوا داوم نی اب بیکرت اب دن اوتلیم تیس ایس هاگن آدشاب هیلوا داوم دلیف کی لم اش هب دوخ زاین دروم هیلوا داوم ی خرب ساسا رب دن اوتب ات دزاس مه ارف یو یارب ار ناکم نی، بطاخم هب نداد دزادرب نآ لم اش تال ووصحم ی وچتسج

تال ووصحم، هنومن یارب. دنوش هتخاس تابیکرت نی زا دن اوتلیم زین تاحفص رتاکچوک ی اهات مسق (#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields") دنشاب نآ هدنشورف مان یزاس هریخند یارب ی دلیف لم اش دن اوتلیم ماچنا ناکم امش هب راکنی. دراد رارق یرگی د هحفص رد هدنشورف تایئزج هک [دینک هدهاشم ار "Fields" دهلیم ار ریزی اهاتیل اعف

- هرامش و مان دن نام، دشاب نآ هدنشورف هب طوبرم تاعالطای یارب یاهی جان دن اوتلیم، لوصحم ره هحفص رد نآ یراجت
- دشاب دوجوم نآ تال ووصحم تسرهف یارب ی تمسق دن اوتلیم، هدنشورف ره هحفص رد

هدنشورف تاعالطای هک ینامز. دوش شیری و هطقن کی رد اهنت تاعالطای زا هطقن ره هک تسرا نی ای ل صا هدی کی هک ینامز؛ دنوشلیم زورب راکدوخ تروص هب زین نآ اب طبترم تال ووصحم مات، دوش یناسرزورب

هنوزفا. دریگب رارق نآ هدرشورف هحفص رد راکدوخ تروص هب، دوش هدوزفا هدرشورف طسوت لوصحم و تاحفص داجی ارب رالوژام ی اوتحم زا هدافتسا درادناتسا هویش، دراد رارق لاپورد هتسه رد هک Views

دینک هدهاشم ار [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#) رتشیب تعالطا ارب؛ تسانوگانوگ یاهاکالب

تعالطا ارب؛ دنتسه یبسانم رازبا ##### رتشیب تعالطا ارب؛ تسانوگانوگ یاهاکالب

دینک هدهاشم ار [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#) رتشیب

طبترم تاعوضوم

- [#### 2.5, "#####"](#)
- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields"](#)
- [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#)
- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)

ناگدننکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) طسوت هدرشورف

2.5. ی اوتحم راتخاس ی زیراهم انرب

فده

هدافتسا تی دوجوم هحاش [ریز و عون هچ زا اوتحم ره ارب] تیس ایس ی اوتحم راتخاس ارب ی حرط داجی اهداش. دنشاب تیس ایس ی اوتحم زا ی تسرهف لماش تاحفص مادک هکنیا و [دوش

زاینشیپ نشناد

- [#### 2.3, "#####"](#)
- [#### 2.4, "#####"](#)
- [#### i.6, "#####"](#)

اهام اگ

1. رظن دروم ی اوتحم لم اش دن اوتلمی هک ، دراد زاین یی اوتحم هچ هب امش تیس ایس هکنی ا هرابرد یرکفمه حیضوت دن اوتلمی هجیتن . دشاب نانآ هب شیامن یارب امش رظن دروم ی اوتحم ای ناگدن کدی دزاب دشاب ["##### i.6, #####"](#) رد طوبرم
 2. رتابسانم نآ یارب یی اوتحم تی دوجوم عون مادک دیریگب میمصت ، هدش یی اسانش ی اوتحم ره یارب شیاری و دورلم راکب تیس ایس رد اوتحم نی ا هنوگچ و اچک دیریگب رظن رد دیاب ، راکنی یارب . تسا هاگشورف ناکم و یراک تعاس دیه اوخب دی اش ، یزرواشک هاگشورف ویرانس رد ، هنومن یارب . دوشلم ماجنا ار امش راک ی شرافس کالب کی ، اوتحم نی ا یارب . دیهد شیامن هحفص ره یرانکراون رد ار شیامن ار هدنشورف ره تایئزج هک ی تاحفص دیریگب میمصت دی اش ، رگیدی لاثم ناو نع هب . دهلم دننک شیاری و اردوخ تاعالطا دن اوتب ناگدنشورف ات دن درگ تیری دم **Node** هنوزفا طسوت دنهلم دهلم اری ناکم اینی چ امش هب **Node** هنوزفا ی هدزوج متسیس
- لی افورپ زا دین اوتلمی ، هنومن یارب ؛ درادن دوجو تبات خساپ کی الومعم تامی مصت هنوگنی یارب کی هب اوتحم تروص نی ا رد اما ، دینک هدافتسا هدنشورف هحفص یارب یی اوتحم هنی زگی یاجب یربراگ دوب دهاوخن ی ناسآ راک ناربراگ ریاس هب هدی ا رد نآ صاصتخا و دیریگیلم قلعت صاخ ربراگ
1. نآ یارب یی اوتحم اش **ریز** هچ دیریگب میمصت ، دینکلم فی رعیت هک یی اوتحم تی دوجوم عون ره نورد هنی زگی تی دوجوم عون رد دیه اوخب تسا نکم ، یزرواشک هاگشورف لاثم رد ، هنومن یارب . تسا بسانم تاحفص یارب اوتحم عون کی ، **هرا برد** و **لوا هحفص** هداس تاحفص یارب اوتحم عون کی ، یی اوتحم دیریگب رظن رد تال و صحم تاحفص یارب اوتحم عون کی و ناگدنشورف
 2. هنومن یارب . دینک فی رعیت ار زاین دروم ی اهدلیف ، دینکلم صخشم هک تی دوجوم هخاش **ریز** ره یارب نآ تاحیضوت و ریوصت ، تیسب و یناشن ، هدنشورف مان یارب تسا نکم **Vendor** ی اوتحم عون ده اوخب ی اهن اگ ادج ی اهدلیف
 3. کیچوک شخب ای لم اک تاحفص لم اش دن اوتلمی هک ، دینک صخشم ار زاین دروم تی دوجوم ی اهت سرهف هاگنآ . دیراد زاین ار نآ زا یی اوهن ی زگی هچ دینک صخشم دیاب ، تسرهف ره یارب . دنشاب هحفص کی زا ، هنومن یارب . دنپای شیامن دیاب اوهن ی زگی نی ا ی تلاح هچ هب و بیترت هچ هب دیریگب میمصت دباب هب تسرهف کی ندرک کچوک ، هژاودی لک اب و جتسج ناکم تیس ایس ناگدن کدی دزاب هب دیه اوخب دی اش اوهن ی زگی مادک دیریگب میمصت دیاب نینچمه . دیهدب ار نآ یزاسبترم تیلباق ای صاخ ی اوهن و جومچم داوم هارمه هب تال و صحم زا تسرهف کی دن مزاین یزرواشک هاگشورف اهنومن یارب . دنپای شیامن دیاب رد هی لوا داوم دلیف طسوت دیاب رم نی ا هک دشابلمی و جتسج لباق تروص هب اهنآ زاین دروم هی لوا دوش هتفرگ رظن رد تال و صحم ی اوتحم عون
 4. دننام **دراد زاین** اری یی اوتحم عون هچ دینک نی رعیت ، تی دوجوم هخاش **ریز** رد هدش صخشم دلیف ره یارب کت اهدلیف رثکا . تسا نکم نآ یارب یزاجم رادقم هچ و **للیبق** نی ا زا و ریوصت ، خیرات ، هداس نتم دهدب ار دوخ هی لوا داوم یارب رادقم دنچ دورو هزاجا دیاب لوصحم کی ، هنومن یارب اما دن تسه رادقم
 5. ناش رادقم هک یی اهدلیف : دینک صخشم اری دینب اهتسرد ی اهت ی دوجوم هب عاجرا تهج بسانم ی اهدلیف دنشاب شیاری و لباق نامز لوط رد هک یزاجم ری داقم . دوش هدی زگرب ی باختنا تسرهف کی زا دیاب دشاب تال و صحم ی اوتحم عون رد هی لوا داوم دلیف دن اوتلمی لاثم کی . دن تسه ی بوخ ی ایدی دن اک
 6. دنوش هدافتسا یی اوتحم ی اهت ی دوجوم ریاس هب عاجرا یارب دن اوتلمی اهدلیف مادک دینک صخشم ی اوتحم عون رد دلیف کی ، دینکلم لوصحم تبت هب مادقا ناگدنشورف هک اجنآ زا ، هنومن یارب دشابلمی زاین دروم ، تسا هدرک تبت ار نآ هدنشورف مادک هکنی ندرک صخشم یارب لوصحم
- تسا هدش هدرآ یزرواشک هاگشورف یارب یی اوهن یی اوتحم راتخاس زا لاثم اجنی ا رد

تئدوچوم عون	تئدوچوم هخاش ریز	اههنومن	اهدلیف
یئاوتحم هنیزگ	هداس هحفص	هحفص، یلصا هحفص هرابرد	هحفص نتم و ناونع
یئاوتحم هنیزگ	هدنشورف	ره یارب یاهحفص هاگشورف رد هدنشورف	نتم، هدنشورف مان یناشن، ریوصت، هحفص
یئاوتحم هنیزگ	لوصحم	ره یارب یاهحفص هدش تبت لوصحم	نتم، لوصحم مان عاجرا، ریوصت، هحفص هک یاهدنشورف هب هدرک تبت ار لوصحم هی لوا داوم یدنباهتسد
یشرافس کالب	یمومع	رد تیاریپک راطخا هارمه هب هحفص نییپ یناشن و یراک تعاس هاگشورف	هب دلیف نودب یصوصخ
یدنباهتسد ترابع	هی لوا داوم	داوم ریاس و هجوگ، جیوه هی لوا	هب دلیف نودب یصوصخ
سامت مرف	یمومع	یمومع سامت مرف	وعوضوم، لمیای، مان مایپ
یربراک لیافورپ	یچی	هدادش یامن تیاس رد دوشلیمن	هب دلیف نودب یصوصخ

درد زاین اهانآ هب تیاس هک ییاهتسر هف و

هیحان ای هحفص هحفص	ریزو تئدوچوم عون نآ هخاش	یئاسابترم رتلیف یدنباهحفص	شئامن لباق یاهدلیف
ناگدنشورف هحفص	یئاوتحم یاههنیزگ هدنشورف	ناگدنشورف مامت بیترت هب، ییابفلا هحفص	و هدنشورف مان، ریوصت نتم هصالخ
تالوصحم هحفص	یئاوتحم یاههنیزگ لوصحم	هی لوا داوم اب رتلیف، بیترت هب، ییابفلا هحفص	لوصحم مان، ریوصت
تالوصحم یرانکراون ریخا	یئاوتحم یاههنیزگ لوصحم	تبت لوصحم ۵ نیرخا هدش	لوصحم مان، ریوصت

دیهدش یازف ار دوخ کرد

- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"](#)

هطوبرم می هافم

[#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)

ناگدن نکات کراشم

by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) و [Grant Dunham](#). طسوت هدش شیری و و هت شون

یرات ساری و راکش درگ :م وهفم .2.6

زای نشی پ شناد

[#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)

تسی چ یرات ساری و راکش درگ

شیری و، ینی بزب، داجی ا هب نآ زا تیعبت اب اهنامزاس هک دنی وگلی می دنی آرف هب یرات ساری و راکش درگ دن زادرپلی م اوتحم راشتنا و

دنی آرف زا ی شخب دنن اوتلی م فل تخم ی اهلقن اب رفن نی دنچ، نامزاس ی اهدن آرف و هزادنا هب هجوت اب نارات ساری و، دنروالی م ردش راگن هب و هدرک یروا عمج ارتاعال طا اوتحم ناگدن نکدی لوت، هنومن یارب. دنشاب بسانم نی بطاخم یارب هک دن زادرپلی م اوتحم راشتنا هب نآ ریری غت تس اوخرد و ینی بزب، شیری و زا سپ دشاب.

هاگن دوخ رد اهن آ تیعضو هک دنتسه راشتنا مدع ای راشتنا مچرپ کی لماش اوتحم عاون، امش تیس رد دینک تبت نآ یارب دین اوتلی م اوتحم ره هریخذ ماگنه و درالیم:

- دنتسه هدهاشم لباقتی سبو نی بطاخم مامت یارب هدش رشتنم یی اوتحم ی اهن یزگ.
- تیه زارحان اربراک طسوت اما، دنتسین هدهاشم لباقتی سبو نی بطاخم یارب هدش رشتنم یی اوتحم دنتسه یسرتسد لباقتی سبو دنتسه هت شاد ار مزال زوجم هک هدش.

رد ریدم طسوت هک ی تروص رد، دین کلی می نابیتی شپ هخسن یری گدر زا یی اوتحم تی دوجوم عاون رثکا هب ینی بزب ره زا سپ رازف المرن، دشاب لاعف تی لباقتی نی رگا. دشاب هدش لاعف تی دوجوم هخاش لری هب راکنیا. دین کلی می داجی اری اوتش اددای نآ تاری غت هرابرد و دزادرپلی م اوتحم می دق هخسن یزاس اهری خذ دهلی م اری لباقتی هخسن کی هب تشگزاب و اوتحم هچخی رات رورم هزاج امش.

ناگدن نکدی لوت یارب یرات ساری و راکش درگ کی دین اوتلی م، اهلینی بزب و راشتنا مدع مچرپ زا هدافتسا اب هب بطاخم هب اوتحم شیمان نودب یلصا تیس رد هک ی تروص هب دیروا دوجوب نارات ساری و و اوتحم ریری غت داد ماجنا دیاب هک یراک اهنت، دشاب راشتنا هداما اوتحم هک ینامز. دن زادرپ نآ یسرب و شیری و تسان راشتنا تیعضو.

طبترم تاعوضوم

- [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)

- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

یتاعلاطم عبانم

رد زین ار راشتنا زا سپ دنی آرف دنه اوخلیم بلغا اهانامزاس، مین کلیم تبحص نیالنی اوتحم زای تقو راکشدرگ هب اهانامزاس یخرب. دنزادرپب نیان اسرزورب هب دشاب مزال دیش اوتحم یاهامیت: دنی رگب رظن، دری گلیم رارق راکشدرگ یچک رد اوتحم عون ره دشاب صخشیم هک ی تروص هب دنراد زاین یرتاهدیچیپ، هنومن یارب [] ددرگلیم هدافتسا نیان یارب راکشدرگ تیعضو هچ زا و تسیچ نیان یربراک یاهزوجم و اهلقن [] هدش رشتنم و ینی بزاب دنمزاین، سیوناشیپ

دینک هدافتسا [Workbench](#) یاهلنوزفا هعومجم زای اوتلیم امش، رتاهدیچیپ یاهراکشدرگ یارب

ناگدننگاتکراشم

[Grant Dunham](#) و [Pronovix](#) رد [Diána Lakatos](#) طسوت هدش شیاری و هتسرون

PHP

رتال اب ای 5.5.9 PHP

یتاعل اطم عبانم

["#####" ## ##### ##### Drupal.org](#)

ن اگدن نکات کراشم

طسوت هدش سابتقا [Karl Kedrovsky](#) و [Brian Emery](#) زا ["#####" ## ##### ##### Drupal.org](#)

3.2. یفاضا یاهرازبا: موهفم

تسا دوجوم نازاساتیاس یارب یی اهرازبا هچ

رتکم نامزرد و رتاقی قد، رتاعی رس ار اهت یاس ناوتلیم اهانآ زا هدافتسا اب هک دراد دوجو یرایسب یاهرازبا تخاس.

Drush دی ناوخب ار بلطم همادا رتشیب تاعالطای ارب

Git

یور هدش داجی تارییغت دی ناوتلیم نآ زا هدافتسا اب هک تسا هخسن لرتنک متسیس کی **Git** تارییغت ندرک ناحتما ناکما **Git** دی نکل لابند ار بلاق ای هنوزفا کی زا یسخب ای تیس ای اهالی یارب دی ناوتلیم نینچمه. تشگزاب لی اف کی زا رتال بق یاهخسن هب، زاین تروص رد و دن کلیم مه ارف ار یارب یدرادناتسا هب نونکا **Git**. دوش هدافتسا فل تخم یاهت یاس و اهالی یارب دی نبرکی یزاسام گمه. تسا هدش لی دبت بو یاهه ژورپ

Comppser دی ناوخب ار بلطم همادا رتشیب تاعالطای ارب

Devel

لی لحت، دک یسررب و ندرک اگابی دهل مچ زا هعسوت فی اظو ریظن یی اهت یل اعف یارب [##### Devel](#) درگیلم رارق هدافتسا دروم یشی امزآ ی اوتحم دی لوت و هدادله اگی ای اوج و سرپ

دراد یصوصخب زیچ هچ **Drush**

طبار رانک رد نی زگی اج یراکهار هک تسا اهت یاس زا یراده گن و نتخاس یارب نامرف **Drush** طخ رازبا کی **Drush** ینف نی لوئسم و نازاساتیاس زا یرایسب. دهلیم هئارا تالی لمع زا اهدرتسگ فی ط یارب لاپورد یرب راک دی فم رایسب ار نآ شزومآ یارب زاین دروم نامز و دننک هدافتسا **Drush** زا نکمم ایجات دن دهلیم حیچرت: دراد دوجو **Drush** زا هدافتسا یارب یفل تخم لیال د. دن اولیم

- **Drush** اهابلاق و اهاهنوزفا، هی اپ رازفالمرن بصن نوچمه فیاظو یارب ار تاروتسد زا یدایز دادعت و اهاهژاورنگ ددجم میظنت؛ وچ و سرپ و یریگاتشونور هلجج زا، هدادلهگی اپ تایلمع یرجا؛ بنکلیم مہارف دندرادر دوخ هب طوبرم **Drush** تاروتسد زین اهابلاق و اهاهنوزفا یخرپ. تقوم هظفاح یزاسکاپ
- تسارناعیرس اهننن کیفارگ طبار اب هسیاقم رد **Drush** زا هدافتسا اب یتیری دم فیاظو ماجنا دشابایم رادروخرپ زین یرتمک یاطخ زا هکلپ
- ریاس اب ار نآ دیناوتلیم رتاهدیچی پی فیاظو ماجنا یارب، تسارنارف **Drush** طخ طبار کی هک اجنآ زا دینک بی کرت زورس تاروتسد
- سرپ یرجا، هنومن یارب؛ دندرادن رارق لاپورد کیفارگ طبار رد هک تساریرتشیب تاناکمال ماش **Drush** هدادلهگی اپ یاهوچ و

نارف **Drush** طخی سرتسد تسارنآ یورل لاپورد هک یورس هب دیاب، دیرادر **Drush** زا هدافتسا دصق رگا یاهل عمل اروتسد یارب. دینک هدافتسا نآ یور **Drush** راگزاس هخسن زا هک دیرادر زاین و دیشاب هتشد تاروتسد هب طوبرم تادننسم نینچمه. دینک هعجارم **##### Drush** هب هخسن یراگزاس و بصن دراد دوجو تیاس نیارد **Drush**

دوشایم هدافتسا هچ یارب Composer

ندرک صخشم اب هدنهداعسوت هک یتروص هب **PHP#** یاهلیگتسباو تیری دم یارب تسارازبا **Composer** نآ بصن و دولناد دنی آرف تیری دم هب رازفالمرن نیارد، دراد ار نآ زا هدافتسا دصق هک یاهنخاباتک هخسن دزادریپی.

یاهنخاباتک یرایسبب زا هدافتسا یارب هک ارچ، تسار **Composer** یاهربراک زا یکی دوخ لاپورد هتسه ار لاپورد هتسه هک ینامز. دراد زاین رازبا نیاب هب، دننستسه بچ او رازفالمرن حیحص یرجا یارب هک، یجراخ دینک دولناد ار دشاب هنخاباتک زا راگزاس هخسن لم ماش هک یناگی اب لیاف کی دیاب ای، دینکلیم بصن دیریپ تروص یجراخ یاهنخاباتک دولناد راک ات هدرک ارچا **Composer** ای

هنوزفا کی، هنومن یارب؛ دننکلیم هدافتسا یجراخ یاهنخاباتک زا زین یربراکاهعماج یاهنوزفا یخرپ ییایفارغج هنوزفا کی و دشاب هتشد زاین دوخ صاخ هنخاباتک هب تسارنکم کم کوبسیف تیعمماج هارمه هب هنوزفا کی بصن یارب. دشاب دنمزاین ییایفارغج هقطنم صیخشت تاناکما هب تسارنکم دیرادر **Composer** یرجا هب زاین، یجراخ یاهنخاباتک

تسا دوجوم بلاق و هنوزفا ناگدنهداعسوت یارب ییاهرازبا هچ

دننستسه دوجوم بلاق و هنوزفا ناگدنهداعسوت یارب وورشپی رازبا، الاب هدش هراشا رازبا رب هوالع

Drupal Console

دزادریپی تیاس اب لماعت و هیلوا یهدک دیلوت هب هک تسارنارف **Drupal Console** طخ رازبا کی زا یشرحب یشی امزآ یوتحم داجی و اهابلاق و اهاهنوزفا بصن، مرف ای کالپ دک دیلوت، هنومن یارب دیریگلیم هرهب **Symfony** لوسنک زا رازبا نیارد. تسارنآ درکلمع

Coder

لاپورد یهدرادناتسا زامش بلاق ای هنوزفا ای دنکلیم یسررب هک تسارنارف **Coder** طخ رازبا کی دنک یسیونهامنرب یهاطخ حالصا هب مادقا دیناوتلیم نینچمه. ریخ ای دننکلیم تیعبت

رگوروم رد ییایپی ع رازبا

یی ادزلالکشا، هدهاشم هزاجا امش هب هک دننستسه یرازبا لم ماش مورک و سکافریاف هلجج زا بو یاهرگوروم ححفص زای تمسقی یورندرک تسارکیلک اب. دننهلیم ار **JavaScript** و **CSS** و **HTML** یاهلیاف یسررب و

دینک لاعف ار رازبا نی ا دیناوتلیم "Inspect element" ای "Inspect" باختنا و [#####](#) [#####](#) دهلیم شیامن رازبا نی ا هرجنپ رد ار لاپورد اب طبترم یفاضا تااعالطا [#####](#) [#####](#)

طبترم تااعوضوم

[### 11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"](#)

یتاعالاطم عبانم

- ["#####"](#) *Drupal.org* یربراکاهعماج تادن تسم هحفص رد
- ["##### ## Composer ##"](#) *Drupal.org* یربراکاهعماج تادن تسم هحفص رد

ناگدن نکات کراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) و [Boris Doesborg](#) طسوت هدش شاری و و هت شون

بصن یارب یزاس اهدام آ 3.3

فده

زاین دروم یاهزاینشیپ مامت تیری دم و لاپورد بصن یارب بسانم یهار باختنا

زاینشیپ نشناد

- [### 3.1, "#####"](#)
- [### 3.2, "#####"](#)

تیس یاهزاینشیپ

دینک بصن ار رازبا نی ا ادتبا، دیراد ار لاپورد بصن دصق Drush اب رگا [### 3.2, "#####"](#) [#####](#) [#####](#) دینک هدهاشم ار

اهامگ

1. لاپورد بصن یارب شور کی باختنا

Download & Extend

Download

Download Drupal 8.1.10

Try a hosted Drupal demo

See [Drupal's project page](#) for more information, older versions, and project development. Explore [hosting options](#) for your site. Browse [documentation](#) for more help and information.

- b. دولناد هحفص هب ات [] بسانم هخسن هب هجوت اب [] هدرک کیلک *Download Drupal* همکد یور دیورب.

Downloads

Recommended releases

These are stable, well-tested versions that are actively supported.

Drupal core 8.1.4

Released: Jul 06 2016

The next patch release of Drupal 8 is ready for new development and use on production sites.

Drupal core 7.44

Released: Jun 15 2016

If you need stability and features from the widest variety of contributed modules and themes, this is the version for you.

- c. کیلک نآ یور و هدرک باختنا *Recommended releases* زا دیراد ار نآ دولناد دصق هک یاهخسن دینک.

Releases

drupal 8.1.3

Download
drupal-8.1.3.tar.gz
tar.gz

11.97 MB

Download
drupal-8.1.3.zip
zip

19.55 MB

- d. دینک دولناد دوخ ه نایاری و ار zip ای tar.gz هخسن
- e. و هدش لنپ لرتنک دراو. دینک دولپآ ینابزیم سیورس یربراک باسح هب ار هدش دولناد لیاف
- f. دینک دولپآ اجنی ارد ارالیاف. دیورب HTML یروتکریاد هب
- f. دوشایم دیدج یروتکریاد کی داجی ا هب رجنم هک دیزاس چراخ هدرشف تلح زا ار zip ای tar.gz لیاف
طبار،تسین سکونیل ونگ تحت امش ینابزیم سیورس ای دیرادن یسرتسدل انیمزگ هب رگا
ینابزیم رورس هب رگا. دشاب هتشد راکنیا یارب یاهویش دیاب ینابزیم سیورس یکیفارگ
دینک هدفاتسا و رشیپ روتسد زا دیناوتیوم دیرادل انیمرت یسرتسد دوخ
- tar -xzf drupal-8.3.2.tar.gz
- g. دشاب هتفرنیب زا یلبق دنیآرف یط رگم، دینک فذح رورس زا ار هدرشف لیاف
- h. یارب امش ینابزیم سیورس یدنبرکیپ اب هک یتروص هب دینک ددجم یراذگمان ار یروتکریاد
دشاب بسانتم تیاسبوی یاسانش

دیهد شرتسگ اردوخ کرد

دیراد ار راک ماجنا دصق بو تحت هدننکابصن زا هدفاتسا اب رگا [#### 3.4, "##### ##### ###"](#)
دینک دهاشم ار

یتاعلاطم عبانم

[Drush](#)

ن اگدننکاتکراشم

[Jennifer Hodgdon](#) هارمه هب [erdfisch](#) رد [Michael Lenahan](#) و [Drew Gorton](#) طسوت هدش شیریو و هتشون
[Red Crackle](#) رد [Jojo Alphonso](#) و

بصن دنیآرف یارجا 3.4

فده

هدننکابصن یارجا اب ریدم باسح داجی و لاپورد بصن

زاینشیپ شناد

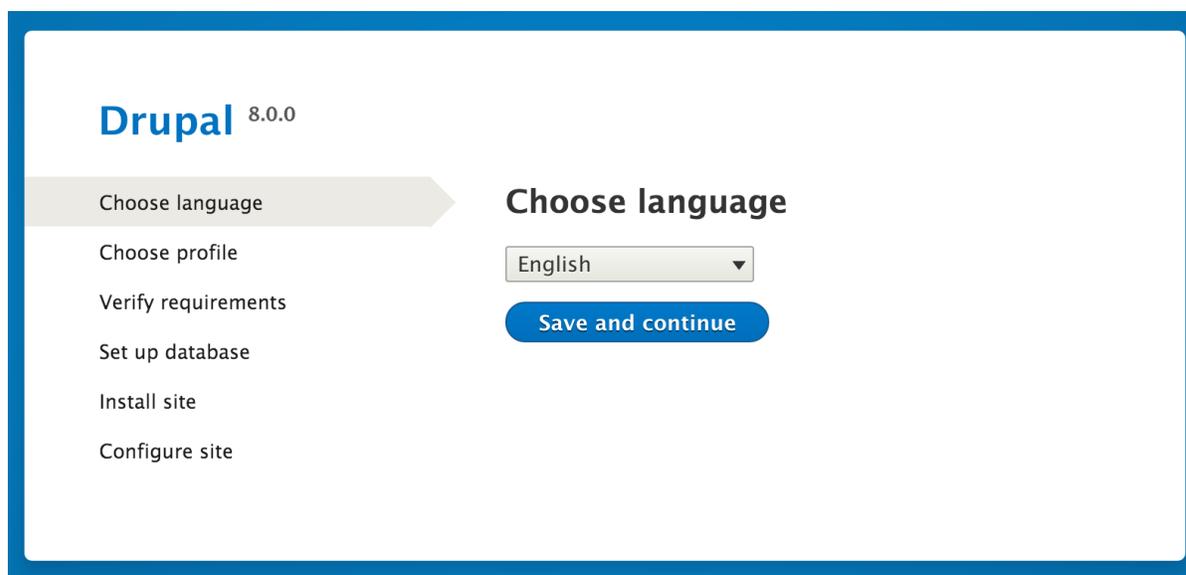
[#### 3.1, "#####: ##### #####"](#)

تیس ای اہزای نشی پ

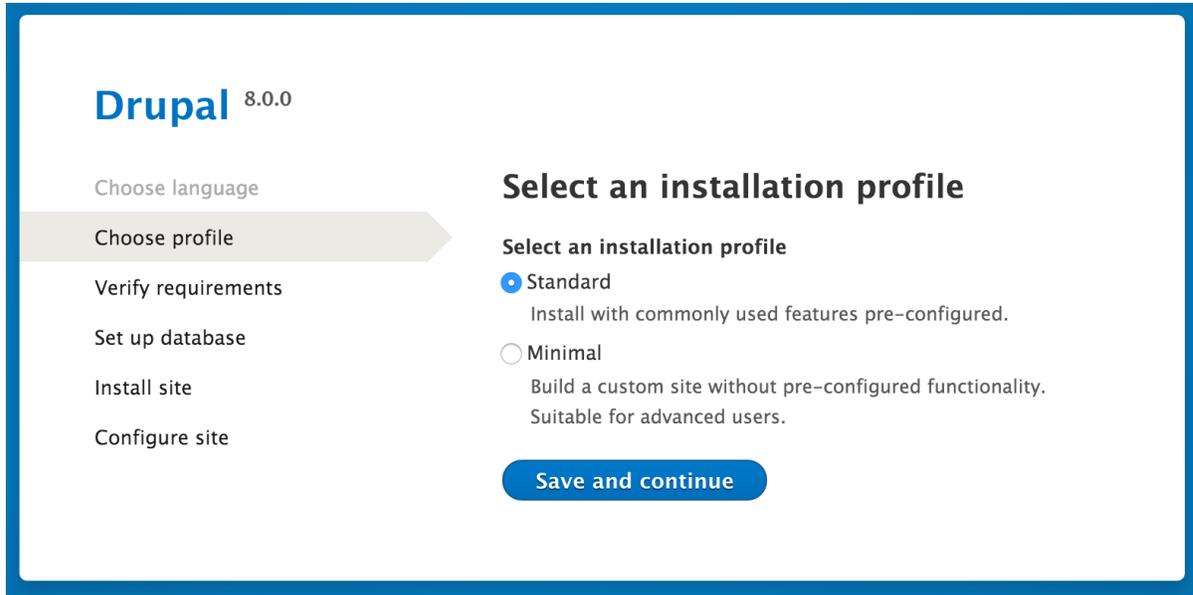
3.3, "##### ####"####

اہم اگ

1. ن کم م، دین کلی م ہدافت سا ومد تیس ای این ابزی م سی ورس رد کی لک کی اب بصن دنی آرف کی زا رگا ی تسد تروص ہب ار لاپورد ی اہالی آرف رگا. دینک ہدہاشم ار ورشی پی اہدنی آرف زا ی شخب ای مامت تس ا دی و رب دوخ تیس بو ی ن اش ن ہب و ہدرک زاب رگورم کی، ہدنن کابصن زاغ آ ی ارب، دی ش اب ہدرک دول پ آ
2. زا دین او تلم نی نچمہ ی سراف، ہنومن ی ارب؛ دینک باختنا ہدنن کابصن ہحفص نی لوارد ار نابز کی تروص ہب ی باختنا نابز ی ارب زاین دروم ی اہالی آرف. دینک باختنا تسرف رد دوجوم ی اہل نابز ری اس یور، نابز باختنا زا سپ. دوش ماجنا نابز نا ہب بصن دنی آرف ہمادات دنوشلم دولناد راکدوخ *Save and continue* دینک کی لک

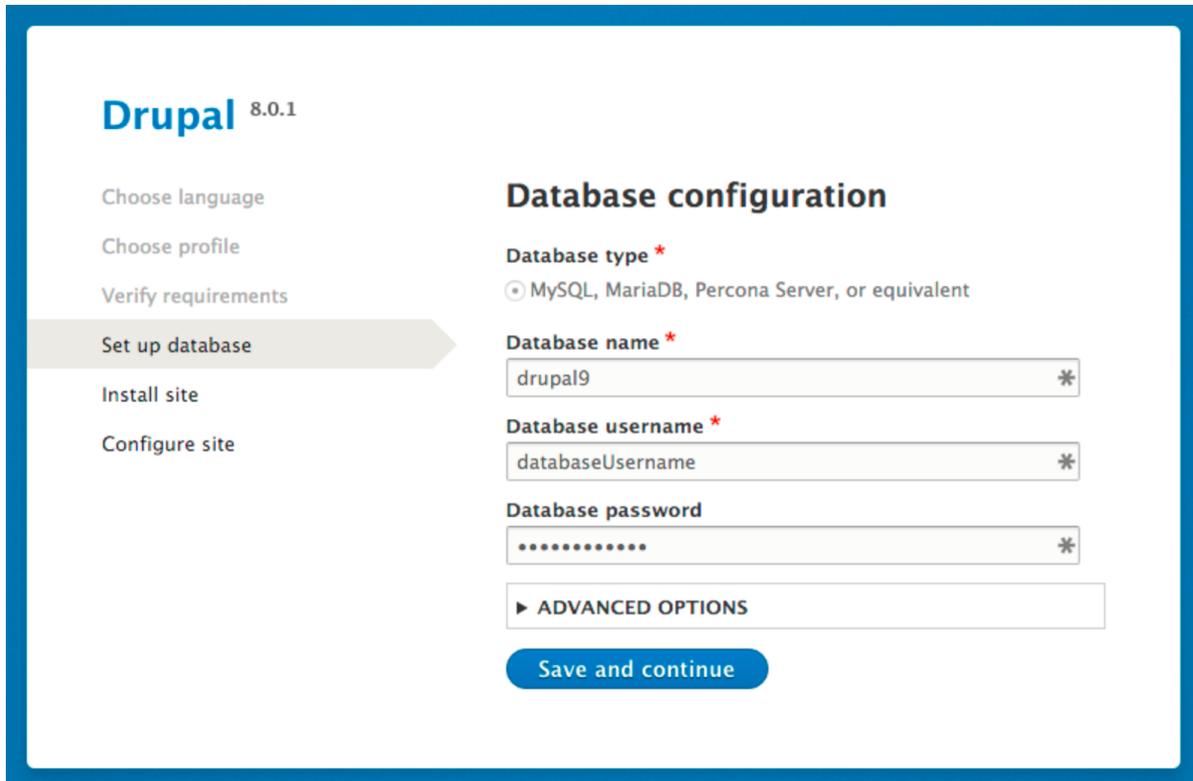


3. ی صخشم ی اہلی باق و اہلی گزی و لماش بصن ی اہالی آرفورپ. دینک باختنا ار بصن لی آرفورپ کی ہارمہ ہب لاپورد ہتسہ زا ہن اگادج دولناد کی تروص ہب ہک دن تسہ تیس ای ن وگانوگ عاون ا ی ارب لی آرفورپ. تس ا بصن لی آرفورپ ود لماش لاپورد. دنوشلم ہئارا نا زاین دروم ی اہل باق و اہل نوزفا دینک کی لک *Save and continue* یور و ہدرک باختنا ار درادناتسا بصن

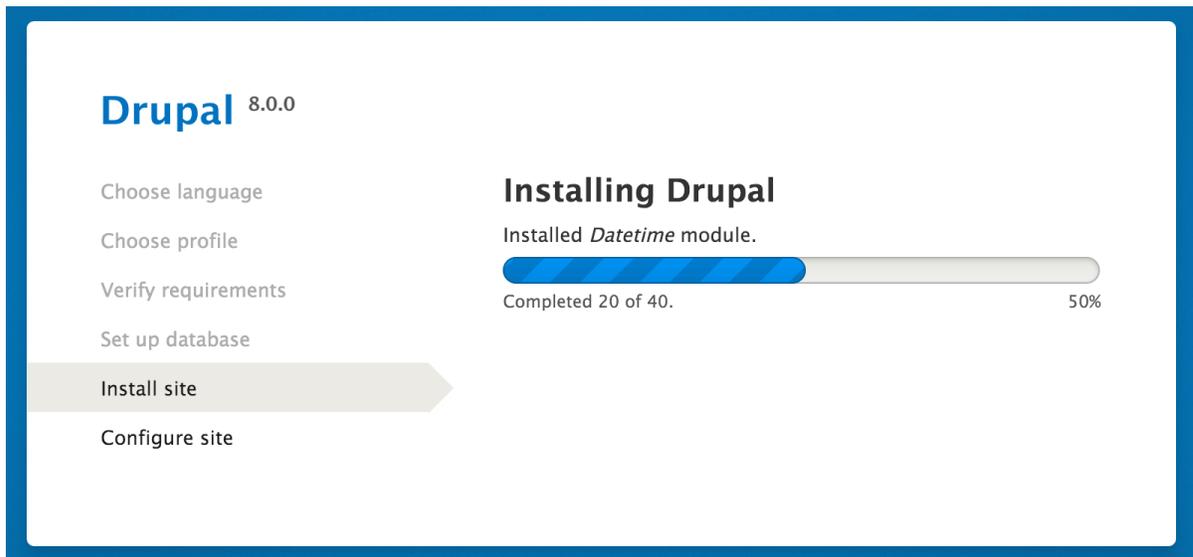


4. دشاب هتشاد دوجو یلکش م رگا .تسا رورس زاین دروم طی ارش ی سررب بصن دنی آرف رد یدعب ماگ ،تروص هب هدن کابصن ،تروص نی ریغ رد .ددرگلم نایامن نآ ل ح یارب صاخ تاروت سد اب ی اه ح فص دورلم یدعب ماگ هب راکدوخ .
5. ار دیدرک داجی ا `##### 3.3, "##### #####"` ل صرف رد هک هدادله اگی اپ زاین دروم تائی زج ار دی ک کی لک *Save and continue* یورس پس هئارا .

دلی ف مان	تاحی ضوت	رادقم
هدادله اگی اپ مان	هب هدش هداد ی شرافس مان هدادله اگی اپ	drupal8
هدادله اگی اپ یرب راکامان	هدش داجی ا یرب راکامان	databaseUsername
هدادله اگی اپ هژاورنگ	هدش باختنا هژاورنگ	



6. اربصن دنی آرف یورش یپ نازی م هک تس ا *Installing Drupal* ن اون ع اب ی شی ام ی پ راون ل ماش دع ب ماگ دورلم دع ب ه ح ف ص ه ب راک دوخ تروص ه ب ، ب ص ن ن ای اب زا س پ . ده دلم ن اش ن



7. رد هدش داچی ای رب راک ب اس ح ه کن ی اه ت کن . تس ات ی اس ه ر ا ب رد ه ی اب تاع ال ط ای خ رب ی دن ب رکی پ رخ آ ماگ ب اس ح ن ی ا ه ر ا ب رد م ه م تاع ال ط ای ا رب . دراد ار م زال ی اهلی س رت س د م امت ه ک تس ا ری دم ب اس ح ن امه هل ح رم ن ی ا

"admin" مان زا دیناوتلی م. دینک هدهاشم ار [7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account" #####](#)، یربراک دشاب درفبصرحنم و نم آنآ هب طوبرم هژاورنگ هک دیبای نانیمطا و دینک هدافتسا نآ یارب

+ دینک رپ ورشیپ تااعالطا اب ار مرف

+

دلیف مان	تاحیضوت	رادقم
تیساس مان	تیساس یارب هدش باختنا مان	Anytown Farmers Market
تیساس لیمیا یناشن	هب هدش هداد صاصتخا لیمیا تیساس	info@example.com
یربراک مان	ریدم یربراک باسح	admin
هژاورنگ	ریدم یارب یباختنا هژاورنگ	
هژاورنگ دیات	یباختنا هژاورنگ رارکت	
لیمیا یناشن	ریدم صوصخم لیمیا	admin@example.com

+ دیرازگب دوخ ضرفشیپ تلاح هب ار هدنامیقاب یاهدلیف دیناوتلی م.

+

Drupal 8.0.1

Choose language

Choose profile

Verify requirements

Set up database

Install site

Configure site

Configure site

SITE INFORMATION

Site name *

Site email address *

Automated emails, such as registration information, will be sent from this address. Use an address ending in your site's domain to help prevent these emails from being flagged as spam.

SITE MAINTENANCE ACCOUNT

Username *

Several special characters are allowed, including space, period (.), hyphen (-), apostrophe ('), underscore (_), and the @ sign.

Password *

Password strength: Strong

Confirm password *

Passwords match: **yes**

To make your password stronger:

- Add uppercase letters

Email address *

REGIONAL SETTINGS

Default country

Select the default country for the site.

Default time zone

By default, dates in this site will be displayed in the chosen time zone.

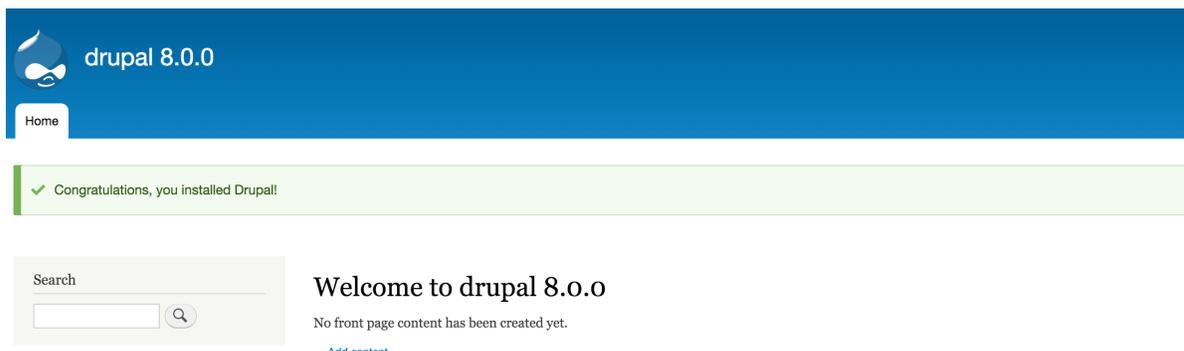
UPDATE NOTIFICATIONS

Update notifications

- Check for updates automatically
- Receive email notifications

The system will notify you when updates and important security releases are available for installed components. Anonymous information about your site is sent to [Drupal.org](https://www.drupal.org).

1. دینک کیلک *Save and continue* یور.
2. مایپ لماش هک دوشلوم تیاده دوختیاس تسخن هحفص هب هلحرم نیارد
تساهحفص یالاب رد #####



دیهد شرتسگ اردوخ کرد

دینک یسررب یلامتحال لاکشراهنوگره یسررب یارب ارتیعضو شرازگ هحفص
دینک دهاشم ار [12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)

طبترم تاعوضوم

- [11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)
- [3.2, "#####"](#)

یتاعلاطم عبانم

Drupal.org یربراکاهعماج تادنتسم هحفص رد ["#####"](#)

ناگدننکاتکراشم

Red Crackle رد [Joey Alphonso](#) و [Drupalize.Me](#) رد [Joe Shindelar](#) طسوت هدش شیری و و هتشون

تیس اس هی اپ یدن برکی پ 4 ل صرف

4.1. Concept: Administrative Overview

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)

What is the administrative menu?

The toolbar provided by the core Toolbar module displays the *Manage* administrative menu at the top or left side of the site, for users with permission to see it. This menu provides access to all of the administrative areas of the site. The menu entries will vary depending on which modules are active on your site and the permissions of the person viewing the menu; if you install using the core Standard installation profile and have full administrative permissions, the top-level entries are as follows:



Content

Lists and manages existing content, and allows creation of new content.

Structure

Contains a list of links for managing structural elements of the site, such as blocks, content types, menus, and taxonomy.

Appearance

Manages themes and appearance-related settings.

Extend

Manages the installation and uninstallation of modules.

Configuration

Contains links to settings pages for various site features.

People

Manages users, roles, and permissions.

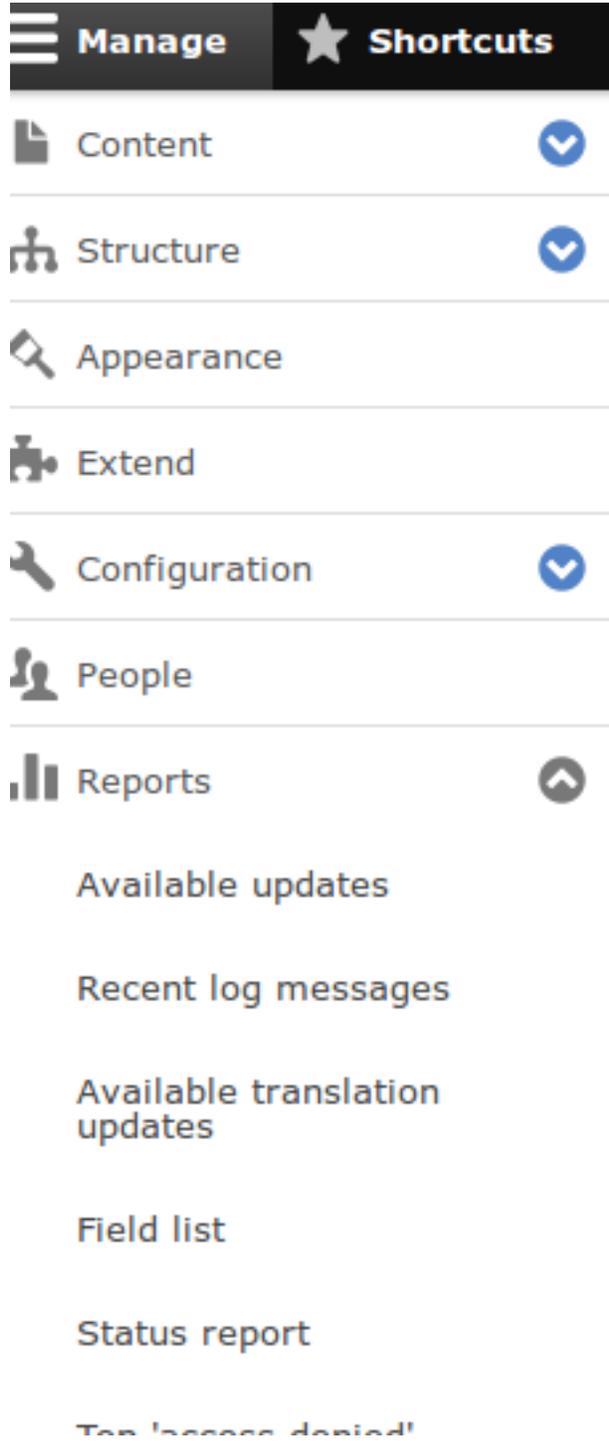
Reports

Contains links to logs, update information, search information, and other information about the site's status.

Help

Lists help topics for installed modules that provide them.

The arrow button on the far right side of the second line of the toolbar (or far left side, if the site is being viewed using a right-to-left-reading language like Arabic) can be used to switch the menu from appearing horizontally at the top of the page, to a vertical format on the left side (or right side, in right-to-left languages). When viewed vertically, the menu becomes an interactive tree.



This guide has a standard way to describe navigation to administrative pages using the administrative toolbar. See [#### i.5, "##### ### #####"](#) for more information.

What are contextual links?

Some administrative and editing functionality on the site can be accessed through the *contextual links* displayed by the core Contextual Links module. Contextual links take you to

some of the same pages that you can access through the administrative menu, but instead of having to navigate through the menu hierarchy, these links are provided near where the related content is displayed on your site.

Contextual links have to be activated to be visible. If your site's theme uses the default styling for contextual links, a pencil icon is used to indicate that contextual links are present and activated, and if you click the icon, you will see the contextual links. There are two ways to activate the pencil icons that provide access to the contextual links:

- If you are using a mouse in a browser, the icon will temporarily appear when you hover over an area that has related contextual links.
- You can click the master pencil icon (or its *Edit* link) at the right end of the top bar in the toolbar, which will activate all of the contextual links on the current page. This icon is only visible on pages with contextual links.



Attributions

Written by [Scott Wilkinson](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

4.2. Editing Basic Site Information

Goal

Change basic site information such as *Site name*, *Slogan*, *Default time zone*.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)

Steps

Configuring the basic site information

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > System > Basic site settings* (*admin/config/system/site-information*) to change the *Site name*, *Slogan*, administrative *Email address*, or the *Default front page* path.
2. Fill in the available fields as appropriate for your site.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Site name	Used to identify the site and displayed in browsers	Anytown Farmers Market
Slogan	Usually displayed sitewide	Farm Fresh Food
Email address	Used as <i>From</i> address in automated email messages (registrations, password resets, etc)	info@example.com

▼ **SITE DETAILS**

Site name *

Slogan

How this is used depends on your site's theme.

Email address *

The *From* address in automated emails sent during registration and new password requests, and other notifications. (Use an address ending in your site's domain to help prevent this email being flagged as spam.)

3. After editing the fields, click *Save configuration* to see the changes applied to the site.

Configuring default Regional settings

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Regional and language > Regional settings (admin/config/regional/settings)*.
2. Select the appropriate country from the *Default country* select list in the *Locale* section, and set which day will be displayed as *First day of week* on your site.
3. In the *Time zones* section, select the sitewide *Default time zone* from the list and configure user-specific time zones.

▼ **LOCALE**

Default country
United States ▼

First day of week
Sunday ▼

▼ **TIME ZONES**

Default time zone
America/Los Angeles ▼

Users may set their own time zone

Remind users at login if their time zone is not set
Only applied if users may set their own time zone.

Time zone for new users

Default time zone

Empty time zone

Users may set their own time zone at registration
Only applied if users may set their own time zone.

Save configuration

4. After editing the fields, click *Save configuration* to see the changes applied to the site.

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Getting started with Drupal 8 administration"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Sree Veturi](#), [Michael Lenahan](#) at [erdfisch](#), and [Antje Lorch](#).

4.3. Installing a Module

Goal

Install a core module, or a contributed module whose files have already been uploaded to the site, through the administrative interface or using Drush.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)

Site prerequisites

If you want to use Drush to install modules, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to install modules.

Using the administrative interface

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend* (*admin/modules*). The *Extend* page appears showing all the available modules in your site.
2. Check the boxes for the module or modules you want to install. For example, check the box for the core Activity Tracker module.

▼ CORE	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Actions ▶ Perform tasks on specific events triggered within the system.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Activity Tracker ▶ Enables tracking of recent content for users.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Aggregator ▶ Aggregates syndicated content (RSS, RDF, and Atom feeds) from external sources.
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Automated Cron ▶ Provides an automated way to run cron jobs, by executing them at the end of a server response.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ban ▶ Enables banning of IP addresses.

3. Click *Install*. The checked modules will be installed.

Using Drush

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend* (*admin/modules*). The *Extend* page appears showing all the available modules in your site.
2. Find the machine name of the module you want to install, by expanding the information area for the module. For instance, the core Activity Tracker module's machine name is *tracker*.
3. Run the following Drush command to install the module:

```
drush en tracker
```

Expand your understanding

If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

Additional resources

[Drush](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

4.4. Uninstalling Unused Modules

Goal

Uninstall the core Search and History modules, as well as the core Activity Tracker module if you installed it in [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#), to reduce overhead.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)

Site prerequisites

- You must have at least one unused module on your site that you want to uninstall, such as the core Search module.
- If you want to use Drush to uninstall modules, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: ##### #"](#).

Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to uninstall modules.

Using the administrative interface

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend > Uninstall (admin/modules/uninstall)* where you will find the list of modules that are ready to be uninstalled.
2. Check the boxes for the modules you are uninstalling (*Search, History, and Activity Tracker*). Click *Uninstall* at the bottom of the page.

UNINSTALL	NAME	DESCRIPTION
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Activity Tracker	Enables tracking of recent content for users.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Automated Cron	Provides an automated way to run cron jobs, by executing them at the end of a server response.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Block	Controls the visual building blocks a page is constructed with. Blocks are boxes of content rendered into an area, or region, of a web page. The following reason prevents Block from being uninstalled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Required by: Custom Block
<input type="checkbox"/>	Breakpoint	Manage breakpoints and breakpoint groups for responsive designs. The following reason prevents Breakpoint from being uninstalled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Required by: Toolbar

تشاداي

You cannot uninstall a module if it is required by some other module(s) and/or functionality. For example, the core File module is required by the core Text Editor, CKEditor, and Image modules. It can't be uninstalled unless you uninstall its dependent module(s) and functionality first. A module that cannot be uninstalled yet will have a disabled checkbox, restricting you from uninstalling it.

3. Step 2 will prompt you to confirm the module uninstall request. Click *Uninstall*.

Confirm uninstall ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Extend](#) » [Uninstall](#)

The following modules will be completely uninstalled from your site, and *all data from these modules will be lost!*

- Activity Tracker
- History
- Search

▼ **CONFIGURATION DELETIONS**

The listed configuration will be deleted.

Block

- Search

Search page

- Content
- Users

Would you like to continue with uninstalling the above?

Uninstall

Cancel

Using Drush

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend* (*admin/modules*). The *Extend* page appears showing all the available modules in your site.
2. Find the machine name of the module you want to uninstall, by expanding the information area for the module. For instance, the core Activity Tracker module's machine name is *tracker*.
3. Run the following Drush command to uninstall the module:

```
drush pm-uninstall tracker
```

Expand your understanding

- [#### 3.2, "#####: ##### ##"](#)

- [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#)
- You can also uninstall the core Comment module by following these steps, but only after comment fields have been removed, which is a side effect of [#### 6.2, "Deleting a Content Type"](#).

Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

4.5. Configuring User Account Settings

Goal

Turn off the ability for people to register user accounts on the site. Also, review and/or edit the email messages generated by the site for events related to user accounts.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > People > Account settings* (*admin/config/people/accounts*).
2. Under *Registration and cancellation*, select *Administrators only* as the people with permissions to register user accounts. You can check *Require email verification when a visitor creates an account* in case you want to change the settings for account registration later on.

▼ **REGISTRATION AND CANCELLATION**

Who can register accounts?

- Administrators only
- Visitors
- Visitors, but administrator approval is required

Require email verification when a visitor creates an account
New users will be required to validate their email address prior to logging into the site, and will be assigned a system-generated password. With this setting disabled, users will be logged in immediately upon registering, and may select their own passwords during registration.

Enable password strength indicator

When cancelling a user account

- Disable the account and keep its content.
- Disable the account and unpublish its content.
- Delete the account and make its content belong to the *Anonymous* user.

Users with the *Select method for cancelling account* or *Administer users* [permissions](#) can override this default method.

3. Optionally, change the default email address from which user account notifications from the farmers market website will be sent. This will help you maintain a separate email address from the one used for the website in general. For example, this email address for user account notifications will be useful for a staff member(s) communicating with vendors.

Notification email address

The email address to be used as the 'from' address for all account notifications listed below. If 'Visitors, but administrator approval is required' is selected above, a notification email will also be sent to this address for any new registrations. Leave empty to use the default system email address (*info@example.com*).

4. Optionally, edit the email templates in the *Emails* section to customize automated emails.

There are seven email templates available with the core. They are meant for different user-specific occasions. All of them can be personalized and three can be disabled via checkboxes: activation, blocking, and cancellation.

You can send out your own text (for example, welcoming the new vendors for whom accounts were just created) by editing the the *Welcome (new user created by administrator)* template.

Emails

Welcome (new user created by administrator)	<p>▼ WELCOME (NEW USER CREATED BY ADMINISTRATOR)</p> <p>Edit the welcome email messages sent to new member accounts created by an administrator. Available variables are: [site:name], [site:url], [user:display-name], [user:account-name], [user:mail], [site:login-url], [site:url-brief], [user:edit-url], [user:one-time-login-url], [user:cancel-url].</p> <p>Subject</p> <p>An administrator created an account for you at [site:name]</p> <p>Body</p> <p>[user:display-name].</p> <p>A site administrator at [site:name] has created an account for you. You may now log in by clicking this link or copying and pasting it into your browser:</p> <p>[user:one-time-login-url]</p> <p>This link can only be used once to log in and will lead you to a page where you can set your password.</p> <p>After setting your password, you will be able to log in at [site:login-url] in the future using:</p> <p>username: [user:name] password: Your password</p> <p>-- [site:name] team</p>
Welcome (awaiting approval)	
Admin (user awaiting approval)	
Welcome (no approval required)	
Account activation	
Account blocked	
Account cancellation confirmation	
Account canceled	
Password recovery	

5. Click *Save configuration* to save the changes.

Expand your understanding

- [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#)
- [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#)

Related concepts

See [### 7, ##### #####](#) for more information about user accounts and permissions.

Additional resources

[Security Guide](#) can help you with a more safety-focused approach to configuration.

Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

4.6. Configuring the Theme

Goal

Edit the settings of the default core Bartik theme to change the color scheme and to add a logo.

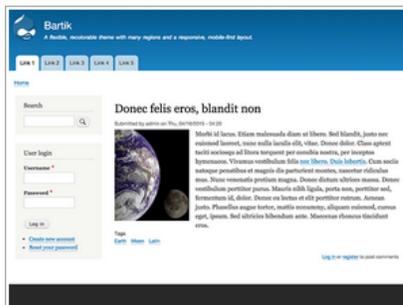
Prerequisite knowledge

[### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Appearance (admin/appearance)*.
2. Under *Installed themes*, you will find Bartik listed as your default theme. Under *Bartik (default theme)*, click *Settings*.

Installed themes



Bartik 8.2.0-dev (default theme)

A flexible, recolorable theme with many regions and a responsive, mobile-first layout.

[Settings](#)

3. Under *Color scheme*, click inside each color build box and type the proper color codes you would like to add. For example, use the following colors:

Area	Color
Header background top	#7db84a (green)
Header background bottom	#2a3524 (dark green)
Main background	#ffffff (white)
Sidebar background	#f8bc65 (light orange)
Sidebar borders	#e96b3c (orange)
Footer background	#2a3524 (dark green)
Title and slogan	#ffffff (white)

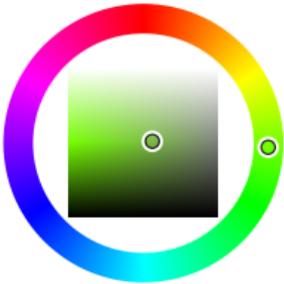
Area	Color
Text color	#000000 (black)
Link color	#2a3524 (dark green)

Note: You can also use the color wheel on the right to select colors of your choice. The web color codes will be added for you.

▼ COLOR SCHEME

Color set: Custom

Header background top	<input type="text" value="#7db84a"/>	
Header background bottom	<input type="text" value="#2a3524"/>	
Main background	<input type="text" value="#ffffff"/>	
Sidebar background	<input type="text" value="#f8bc65"/>	
Sidebar borders	<input type="text" value="#e96b3c"/>	
Footer background	<input type="text" value="#2a3524"/>	
Title and slogan	<input type="text" value="#ffffff"/>	
Text color	<input type="text" value="#000000"/>	
Link color	<input type="text" value="#2a3524"/>	



4. Under *Logo image*, uncheck *Use the logo supplied by the theme*.

▼ LOGO IMAGE SETTINGS

Use the default logo supplied by the theme

Path to custom logo

Examples: logo.svg (for a file in the public filesystem), public://logo.svg, or core/themes/bartik/logo.svg.

Upload logo image

No file selected.

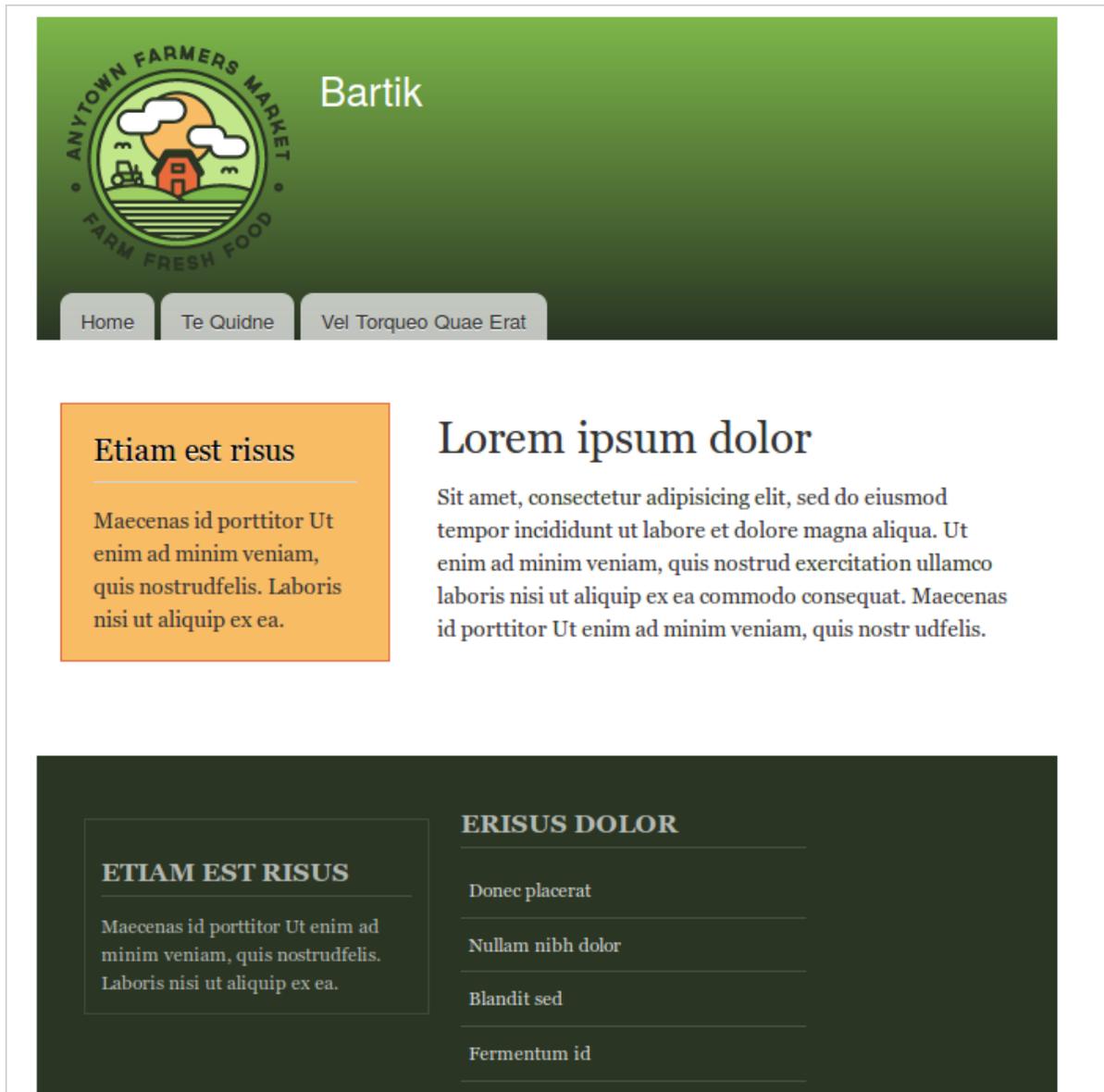
If you don't have direct file access to the server, use this field to upload your logo.

5. Under *Upload logo image*, locate a logo file and upload it to your site. Note: You can also set a universal logo for all themes under *Appearance > Settings (admin/appearance/settings)*. A custom logo for your theme will override the universal logo.

Once you have selected the file you would like to upload, you will see its filename next to the *Choose File* or *Browse* button in your browser.

6. In order to save your changes and see the updated colors and logo on your site, click *Save configuration* at the bottom of the page.

Note: Under *Color scheme*, there is a *Preview* section that displays a sample of how your website will look with the new settings.



7. Click *Return to site* or *Home* in the toolbar to verify that you have updated the core Bartik theme settings for your website.



Expand your understanding

- [#### 11.4, "Finding Themes"](#)
- [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#)
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

Attributions

Written and edited by [Ann Greazel](#), [Amanda Luker](#) at [Advomatic](#), and [Jack Haas](#).

هداس هحفص تیری دم 5. لصف

5.1. Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs

What is a URL?

URL is the abbreviation for "Uniform Resource Locator", which is the page's address on the web. It is the "name" by which a browser identifies a page to display. In the example "Visit us at *example.com*.", *example.com* is the URL for the home page of your website. Users use URLs to locate content on the web.

What is a Path?

A path is the unique, last part of the URL for a specific function or piece of content. For example, for a page whose full URL is *http://example.com/node/7*, the path is *node/7*.

Here are some examples of paths you might find in your site:

- *node/7*
- *taxonomy/term/6*
- *admin/content/comment*
- *user/login*
- *user/3*

What is an Alias?

The core software has a feature called "URL Alias" that allows you to provide a more understandable name to the content. So, if you have an "About Us" page with the path *node/7*, you can set up an alias so that your visitors will see it as *http://www.example.com/AboutUs*. The core Path module, which supports URL aliasing, provides this functionality.

Related topics

- [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

Attributions

Adapted by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#) from "[URL aliases](#)", and "[Understanding Drupal paths](#)" copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

5.2. Creating a Content Item

Goal

Create and publish a content item that will be used as the home page of the site.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#)

Site prerequisites

The *Basic page* content type must exist. This is created on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content > Add content > Basic page (node/add/page)*. The *Create Basic page* form appears.
2. Click *Edit summary*.
3. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Title	Title of the page. Will also be used as a meta tag in the source code, URL alias, and as label of the content item in administration screens	Home
Summary	Summary of the value of the body field. Can be used as teaser in overview pages	Opening times and location of City Market.
Body	Full content of the page	Welcome to City Market - your neighborhood farmers market!

Field name	Explanation	Value
		Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown
URL path settings > URL alias	Alternate relative path for the content	/home

By clicking the *Source* button in the rich text editor toolbar, you can see the HTML source code of the text that you are editing.

The screenshot shows the 'Create Basic page' interface. The 'Title' field contains 'Home'. The 'Summary' field contains 'Opening times and location of City Market'. The 'Body' field is a rich text editor with a toolbar and a 'Source' button. The right sidebar shows settings for 'URL PATH SETTINGS' with the 'URL alias' field set to '/home'. At the bottom, there are 'Save and publish' and 'Preview' buttons.

4. Click *Preview* to ensure everything looks like expected.
5. Click *Back to content editing*.
6. Click *Save and publish*. The content is saved and can be found on the *Content* page.
7. Follow the same steps to create an About page, with title "About", and a body telling about the history of the farmer's market.

Expand your understanding

- [#### 5.5, "Designating a Front Page for your Site"](#)

- [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#)
- [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#)

Related concepts

- [#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)
- [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "About nodes"](#)

Attributions

Written by [Agnes Kiss](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

5.3. Editing a Content Item

Goal

Update the hours on the Home page content item.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)

Site prerequisites

A content item for the Home page must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content (admin/content)*.

2. If the content item you want to edit was updated or created recently, it should appear near the top of the content list on that page. If not, you can use the *Content type*, *Title*, or other filters to locate the content item.

Published status: Content type: Title: Language:

With selection:

Hide lower priority columns

<input type="checkbox"/>	TITLE	CONTENT TYPE	AUTHOR	STATUS	UPDATED	OPERATIONS
<input type="checkbox"/>	About	Basic page	admin	Published	07/06/2016 - 15:55	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Home	Basic page	admin	Published	07/06/2016 - 15:55	<input type="button" value="Edit"/>

3. Click *Edit* in the row of the content item you want to edit (Home), to open the content editing form. Update the opening hours in the *Body* field. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#) for an explanation of the fields and a screenshot.
4. Check *Create new revision* in the box on the right, if it is not already checked, and enter a *Revision log message* explaining what changes you are making (for example, you might enter "Updated opening hours"). This text will appear in the revision log for the page.

Published

Last saved: 07/06/2016 - 15:55

Author: admin

Create new revision

Revision log message

Updated opening hours

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

5. Click *Save and keep published* to save your changes.
6. You will be redirected back to the *Content* administrative page, and there should be a message showing that the content item was updated.

✓ Basic page *Home* has been updated.

Expand your understanding

As an alternative to the first two steps above, you can also reach the content edit form as follows:

1. Starting from your site's home page, use the site's navigation menus to locate the page where the content you want to edit is displayed to visitors.
2. Most themes will display an *Edit* link or tab near the top of that page to people with permission to edit the page; clicking the link will take you to the full content edit form.
3. You could also use the in-place editor (refer to [#### 5.4, "Editing with the In-Place Editor"](#)) from this page.

Attributions

Written by [Chris Dart](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

5.4. Editing with the In-Place Editor

Goal

Use the in-place editor to add information to the About page without opening the full editor page.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

- [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)

Site prerequisites

The About page you want to edit must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

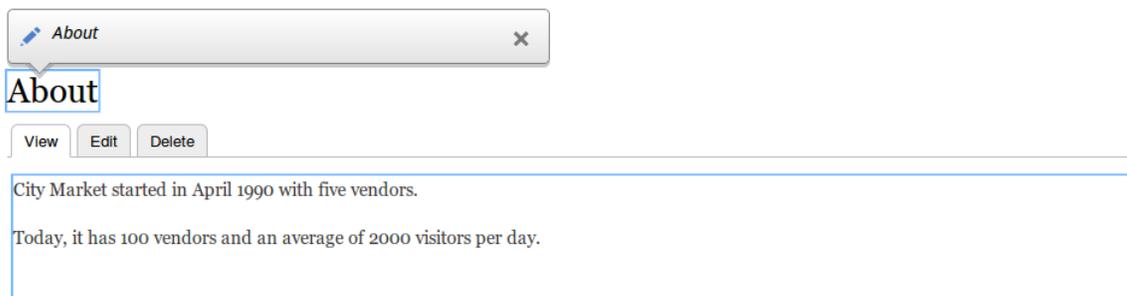
Steps

Navigate to the About page to edit content with the in-place editor. If the page has not yet been added to a navigation menu, you can find and open it by following these steps:

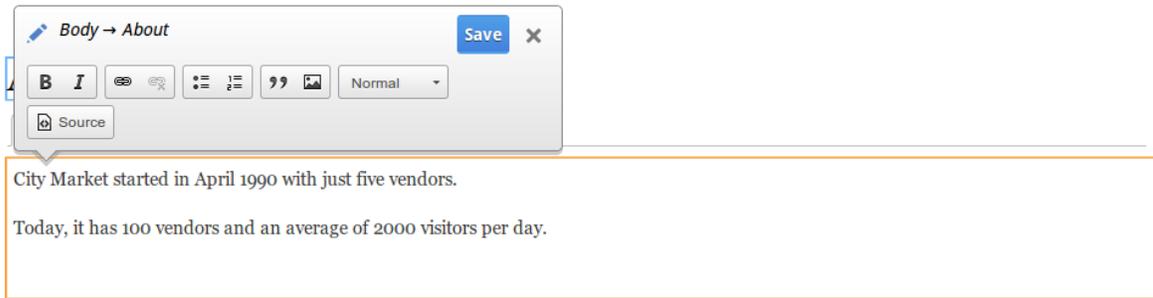
1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content* (*admin/content*).
2. If the content item you want to edit was updated or created recently, it should appear near the top of the content list on that page. If not, you can use *Type*, *Title*, or other filters to locate the content item.
3. Find the About page and click it.

Once the content you want to edit is being viewed in your browser, follow these steps to use the quick editor:

1. Find the section of the page that displays the content you want to edit, and turn on quick editing mode using the *Quick edit* contextual link (see [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#) for instructions on how to access contextual links). You will see each editable field on this content item outlined in blue; also, a hovering dialog box will appear.



2. Click the *Body* text area to begin editing. The *Body* field supports a rich text editor. The editing toolbar will be displayed in a hovering dialog box.
3. Add some information about City Market. A *Save* button will appear in the hovering dialog box, and the field outline will change color.



4. If you are satisfied with your edits, click *Save* in the hovering dialog box. If not, click "x" to discard your edits, and confirm. Either way, quick editing mode will be turned off.

Expand your understanding

Try using the full editor on the same content (see [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)) and note that there is much more information that can be edited that is not available in the quick editor.

Attributions

Written and edited by [David Lee](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

5.5. Designating a Front Page for your Site

Goal

Configure which content item is displayed as the front page of your website.

Site prerequisites

The content item that you want to designate as the front page of your site must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > System > Basic site settings* (*admin/config/system/site-information*).

2. Under *Front page*, replace */node* with the name of the page you would like to make the home page. To use the home page that was previously created, provide its path */home*. Click *Save configuration*.

▼ **FRONT PAGE**

Default front page

http://example.com

Optionally, specify a relative URL to display as the front page. Leave blank to display the default front page.

3. Navigate to the home page to verify that it displays content as configured by you.



Expand your understanding

- [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#)
- Follow [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#) to create an error page to be used as a 404 (page not found) or ⁴⁰³ (not authorized) response on your site. Then following the steps here, you can designate it as the error response, in the *Error pages* section of the configuration.

Related concepts

[#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Ann Greazel](#), [Jack Haas](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

5.6. Concept: Menu

What is a menu?

Menus are a collection of links (menu items) used to navigate a website. The core Menu UI module provides an interface to control and customize the menu system. Menus are primarily displayed as a hierarchical list of links. By default, new menu items are placed inside a built-in menu labeled *Main navigation*, but administrators can also create custom menus.

The core Standard installation profile contains five menus:

Main navigation

Links to sections intended for site visitors. They are usually created by site administrators.

Administration

Links to administrative tasks. This menu mainly contains links supplied by modules on your site.

User account menu

Links to tasks associated with the user account such as *My account* and *Log out*.

Footer

Links to important pages within the site intended for the footer. They are usually created by site administrators.

Tools

Links to tasks necessary for site visitors. Some modules feature their links here.

You can customize menus in the following ways, using the menu administration functionality:

- Creating new custom menus.
- Adding new menu items.
- Reordering menu items by setting their "weight" or by dragging them into place.
- Renaming menu items.
- Changing the link title (the tooltip that appears when you mouse over a menu item).
- Moving a menu item into a different menu by editing its *Parent* property.

A menu item will only be shown to a visitor if they have the rights to view the page it links to. For example, the admin menu item is not shown to visitors who are not logged in.

Related topics

- [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#)
- [#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#)

- To display a menu, you will need to place the block that corresponds to the menu in a region of your theme; see [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#), [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ## ####"](#), and [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#). The core Standard installation profile places all of the menus it defines except Administration in regions of the core Bartik theme. The core Toolbar module, which is installed by the core Standard installation profile, displays the Administration menu; it is also displayed by the contributed Admin Toolbar module.

Attributions

Written and edited by [Ajay Viswambharan](#), [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

5.7. Adding a Page to the Navigation

Goal

Add a page to the navigation. For example, the About page.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#)
- [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#)

Site prerequisites

The About page content item must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content (admin/content)*.
2. Find the About page, and click *Edit* in that row. The content editing form appears.

<input type="checkbox"/>	TITLE	CONTENT TYPE	AUTHOR	STATUS	UPDATED	OPERATIONS
<input type="checkbox"/>	Home	Basic page	admin	Published	07/06/2016 - 12:52	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	About	Basic page	admin	Published	07/06/2016 - 12:52	Edit

3. Click *Menu settings* on the right to expand it.
4. Check *Provide a menu link* for the menu options to appear.
5. Enter values from the table below:

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Menu link title	Title that will be displayed in the menu	About
Description	Text that will be displayed when a visitor hovers over the link	History of the market
Parent item	Location of the page in the menu hierarchy. For example, if you choose <i><Main navigation></i> , the page will appear in the highest level of the navigation. By choosing another menu item as parent, you can create a menu hierarchy of multiple levels.	<Main navigation>
Weight	The order in which the page should appear in the menu (lower-weighted menu items will be shown before higher-weighted menu items)	-2

▼ **MENU SETTINGS (ABOUT)**

Provide a menu link

Menu link title

About

Description

History of the market

Shown when hovering over the menu link.

Parent item

<Main navigation>

Weight

-2

Menu links with lower weights are displayed before links with higher weights.

6. Click *Save and keep published* to save the changes. Click *Home* or *Return to site* in the navigation bar to see the result, which could look like the picture below.



Tools

Add content

Home

View Edit Delete Revisions

Welcome to City Market - your neighborhood farmers market!

Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September

Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown

Expand your understanding

[#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with menus"](#)

Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborg](#) from "[Working with Menus](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#); edited by [Jack Haas](#).

5.8. Changing the Order of Navigation

Goal

Reorder the items in a menu.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#)
- [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#)

Site prerequisites

Home and About pages must exist in the main navigation menu. See [#### 5.7, "Adding a Page to the Navigation"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Menus (admin/structure/menu)* where all menus on your site are listed. Click *Edit Menu* from the *Operations* dropdown for *Main navigation*. You can also reach this page using contextual links (refer to [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)) for the menu.

TITLE	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
Administration	Administrative task links	Edit menu ▾
Footer	Site information links	Edit menu ▾
Main navigation	Site section links	Edit menu ▾
Tools	User tool links, often added by modules	Edit menu ▾
User account menu	Links related to the active user account	Edit menu ▾

2. The *Edit menu* page will display a list of each item in the menu you chose (*Main navigation*).

MENU LINK	ENABLED	OPERATIONS
+ About	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Edit ▾
+ Home	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Edit

Save

3. Use the cross bar handles to reorder the menu items. Drag the Home menu item above the About menu item so that it appears first.

 *You have unsaved changes.

MENU LINK	ENABLED	OPERATIONS
+ Home	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Edit
+ About	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Edit ▾

Save

4. Click *Save*.
5. The home page now displays the main navigation with the Home menu item displayed first.



Expand your understanding

Add a menu item called *Contact*, leading to the */contact* page, to your Main navigation menu.

The contact page is provided by the core Contact module; you may want to edit its layout and fields (see [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#)).

Related concepts

[#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#)

Attributions

Written by [Ann Greazel](#).

ی او ت ح م ر ا ت خ ا س م ی ظ ن ت 6 ل ص ر ف

6.1. Adding a Content Type

Goal

Add and configure a new content type Vendor.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 2.3, "##### # #####"#####](#)

Site prerequisites

You need to have a plan in place for your content structure. See [#### 2.5, "#####"#####](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)*. The *Content types* page appears showing all the available types of content.
2. Click *Add content type*. The *Add content type* page appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Name	Name of the content type	Vendor
Description	Explain the use of the content type	Information about a vendor

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#)

Individual content types can have different fields, behaviors, and permissions assigned to them.

Name *

Vendor Machine name: vendor [\[Edit\]](#)

The human-readable name of this content type. This text will be displayed as part of the list on the *Add content* page. This name must be unique.

Description

Information about a vendor

This text will be displayed on the *Add new content* page.

3. In the vertical tab *Submission form settings*, configure the form that is used for creating and editing content of this type. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Title field label	Label of the Title field that is shown when editing or creating content of this type.	Vendor name
Preview before submitting	Option to choose whether you should preview the content before submitting.	Optional
Explanation or submission guidelines	Instructions for creating or editing content.	(Leave blank)

Submission form settings

Vendor name

Publishing options

Published , Create new revision

Display settings

Don't display post information

Menu settings

Title field label *

Vendor name

Preview before submitting

Disabled

Optional

Required

Explanation or submission guidelines

This text will be displayed at the top of the page when creating or editing content of this type.

4. In the vertical tab *Publishing options*, decide on default options for new content of this type. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Published	Make the content item published by default.	Checked
Promoted to front page	In a default website, this setting can be used to show content on the homepage.	Unchecked
Sticky at top of lists	In a default website, this setting can be used to keep content on top of a list.	Unchecked
Create new revision	Create a new revision each time the vendor is being edited.	Checked

Changing these settings does not affect the content items that have already been created.

Submission form settings Vendor name	Default options <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Published <input type="checkbox"/> Promoted to front page <input type="checkbox"/> Sticky at top of lists <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Create new revision Users with the <i>Administer content</i> permission will be able to override these options.
Publishing options Published , Create new revision	
Display settings Don't display post information	
Menu settings	

5. In the vertical tab *Display settings*, decide if the author and publication date will be visible in the content item. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Display author and date information	Display the author username and publication date on each vendor page.	Unchecked

Submission form settings Vendor name	<input type="checkbox"/> Display author and date information Author username and publish date will be displayed.
Publishing options Published , Create new revision	
Display settings Don't display post information	
Menu settings	

6. In the vertical tab *Menu settings*, fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Available menus	Menus that this type of content can be added to. Vendors do not need to appear in menus, so uncheck all menu options.	Unchecked

Submission form settings Vendor name	Available menus <input type="checkbox"/> Administration <input type="checkbox"/> Footer <input type="checkbox"/> Main navigation <input type="checkbox"/> Tools <input type="checkbox"/> User account menu The menus available to place links in for this content type.
Publishing options Published , Create new revision	
Display settings Don't display post information	
Menu settings	

7. Click *Save and manage fields* to save the content type. The *Manage fields* page appears that allows you to add fields to the content type. See [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

Manage fields ☆

Edit
Manage fields
Manage form display
Manage display

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Vendor

✓ The content type *Vendor* has been added.

+ Add field

LABEL	MACHINE NAME	FIELD TYPE	OPERATIONS
Body	body	Text (formatted, long, with summary)	Edit ▼

8. Follow the same steps to create a content type for recipes. Example values for the fields in the forms, where they are different from the steps above:

Field name	Example value
Name	Recipe
Description	A recipe submitted by a vendor
Submission form settings - Title	Recipe name

Expand your understanding

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

- Install and configure the [contributed Pathauto module](#) so that content items get automatically generated URLs/path aliases. See [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#) for more on URLs within your site, [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#) for instructions on finding contributed modules, and [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#) for instructions on downloading and installing contributed modules.

Attributions

Written and edited by [Sree Veturi](#), [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

6.2. Deleting a Content Type

Goal

Delete the unneeded content type *Article*.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#)

Site prerequisites

The *Article* content type must exist. It is created on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)*. The *Content types* page appears.
2. Click *Delete* in the *Operations* dropdown button for the *Article* content type.

Content types ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#)

[+ Add content type](#)

NAME	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
Article	Use <i>articles</i> for time-sensitive content like news, press releases or blog posts.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manage fields Manage form display Manage display Edit Delete
Basic page	Use <i>basic pages</i> for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.	
Recipe	Recipe submitted by a vendor	
Vendor	Information about a vendor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manage fields

3. A confirmation page is displayed. Click *Delete*.

Are you sure you want to delete the content type *Article*?

☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Article](#)

This action cannot be undone.

▼ **CONFIGURATION DELETIONS**

The listed configuration will be deleted.

Entity form display

- node.article.default

Entity view display

- node.article.default
- node.article.rss
- node.article.teaser

Field

- Body
- Comments
- Image
- Tags

RDF mapping

- node.article

[Delete](#) [Cancel](#)

4. The *Content types* page appears with a confirmation message saying that the content type has been deleted:

✓ The content type *Article* has been deleted.

Attributions

Written and edited by [Sree Veturi](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

6.3. Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type

Goal

Add a link field and an image field to the Vendor content type.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)

Site prerequisites

The Vendor content type must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).

Steps

Add the fields Vendor URL and Main image to the Vendor content type.

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)*. Then click *Manage fields* in the dropdown button for the Vendor content type. The *Manage fields* page appears.
2. Click *Add field*. The *Add field* page appears. You can either create a new field for the content type or re-use an existing field.
3. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Add a new field	Field type	Link
Label	Label that is visible in administration pages	Vendor URL

A machine name is automatically generated, based on the *Label* value. Click *Edit* if you want to override the default name.

Add field ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Vendor](#) » [Manage fields](#)

Add a new field

Link ▼

Label *

Vendor URL Machine name: field_vendor_url [Edit]

Save and continue

4. Click *Save and continue*. The page Vendor URL appears which lets you set the allowed number of values. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Allowed number of values	The number of values that can be entered	Limited, ¹

5. Click *Save field settings*. The page *Vendor URL settings for Basic page* appears which allows you to configure the field. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Label	Label that is visible in the content form	Vendor URL
Help text	The instruction that is shown below the field	(leave blank)
Required field	Whether the field is required or not	Unchecked
Allowed link type	The kind of links that can be entered	External links only
Allow link text	Whether a link text can be entered	Disabled

Vendor URL settings for Vendor ☆

Edit Field settings

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Vendor » Manage fields

Label *
Vendor URL

Help text

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.
Allowed HTML tags: <a> <big> <code> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <sub> <sup> <tt> <p>

This field supports tokens.

Required field

DEFAULT VALUE
The default value for this field, used when creating new content.
Vendor URL
This must be an external URL such as `http://example.com`.

Allowed link type
 Internal links only
 External links only
 Both internal and external links

Allow link text
 Disabled
 Optional
 Required

- Click *Save settings*. The Vendor URL has been added to the content type. Continue creating the Main image field.
- Click *Add field*. The *Add field* page appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Add a new field	Field type	Image
Label	Label that is visible in administration pages	Main image

- Click *Save and continue*. The page Main image appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Allowed number of values	The number of values that can be entered	Limited, ¹

You can set a default image here. This will be used when you do not provide an image when creating a Vendor content item.

- Click *Save field settings*. The page *Main image settings for Basic page* appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Label	Label that is visible in the content form	Main image
Help text	The instruction that is shown below the field	(leave blank)
Required field	Whether the field is required or not	Checked
Allowed file extensions	The type of images that can be uploaded	png, gif, jpg, jpeg
File directory	The directory where the files will be stored. By providing a file directory value, you ensure that all images uploaded via the Main image field will be located in the same directory.	vendors
Minimum image resolution	The minimum resolution of the uploaded image	600 x 600
Maximum upload size	The maximum file size of the uploaded image	5 MB
Enable Alt field	Whether an alternative text can be entered	Checked
Alt field required	Whether an alternative text is required	Checked

Main image settings for Vendor ☆

[Edit](#) [Field settings](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Vendor](#) » [Manage fields](#)

Label *
Main image

Help text

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.
Allowed HTML tags: <a> <big> <code> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <sub> <sup> <tt> <p>

This field supports tokens.

Required field

DEFAULT IMAGE

If no image is uploaded, this image will be shown on display and will override the field's default image.

Image
 No file selected.
Image to be shown if no image is uploaded.

Alternative text

This text will be used by screen readers, search engines, and when the image cannot be loaded.

Title

The title attribute is used as a tooltip when the mouse hovers over the image.

Allowed file extensions *

Separate extensions with a space or comma and do not include the leading dot.

File directory

10. Click *Save settings*. Main image has been added to the content type.

Manage fields ☆

[Edit](#) [Manage fields](#) [Manage form display](#) [Manage display](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Vendor](#)

✓ Saved Main image configuration.

[+ Add field](#)

LABEL	MACHINE NAME	FIELD TYPE	OPERATIONS
Body	body	Text (formatted, long, with summary)	Edit
Main image	field_main_image	Image	Edit
Vendor URL	field_vendor_url	Link	Edit

11. Add a Main image field to the Recipe content type, using similar steps. Start by navigating to the Recipe content type's *Manage Fields* page in step 1. Then skip to step 7 and follow the remaining steps, but reuse the existing Main image field you created for the Vendor content type rather than creating a new field. In subsequent steps, some of the configuration screens will not be available, because of the field reuse.

12. Create two Vendor content items (see [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)) called "Happy Farm" and "Sweet Honey". Make sure that they include images and URLs.

Expand your understanding

- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)
- [#### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"](#)
- [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Add a field to a content type"](#)

Attributions

Written by [Sree Veturi](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

6.4. Concept: Reference Fields

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)

What is a reference field?

A *reference field* is a field that represents a relationship between an entity and one or more other entities, which may belong to the same or different entity type. The three most commonly-used reference fields are:

Content reference

A reference to a content item. For example, you might want to connect recipes to the vendors who submitted them. You would set up a content reference field called Submitted by referencing Vendor content items on the Recipe content type.

Taxonomy term reference

A reference to a taxonomy term. For example, you might want to connect recipes to their ingredients. You would set up a taxonomy term reference field called Ingredients on the Recipe content type. This reference field will point to the vocabulary Ingredients.

User reference

A reference to a user account. For example, you might want to connect recipes with their chefs. You would set up a user reference field called Chefs on the Recipe content type.

Related topics

[#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

6.5. Concept: Taxonomy

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields"](#)

What is Taxonomy?

Taxonomy is used to classify website content. One common example of taxonomy is the tags used to classify or categorize posts in a blog website; the farmers market website could use an ingredients taxonomy to classify recipes. Individual taxonomy items are known as *terms* (the blog tags or recipe ingredients in these examples); and a set of terms is known as a *vocabulary* (the set of all blog post tags, or the set of all recipe ingredients in these examples). Technically, taxonomy terms are an entity type and the entity subtypes are the vocabularies. Like other entities, taxonomy terms can have fields attached; for instance, you could set up an image field to contain an icon for each term.

An individual vocabulary can organize its terms in a hierarchy, or it could be flat. For example, blog tags normally have a flat structure, while a recipe ingredients vocabulary could be hierarchical (for example, tomatoes could be a sub-term of vegetables, and under tomatoes, you could have green and red tomatoes).

Taxonomy terms are normally attached as reference fields to other content entities, which is how you can use them to classify content. When you set up a taxonomy reference field, you can let users enter terms in two ways:

Free tagging

New terms can be created right on the content editing form.

Fixed list of terms

The list of terms is curated and managed outside the content editing form, and users can only choose from the existing list when editing content.

Taxonomy reference fields can be added to any entity, such as user accounts, custom blocks, or regular content items. If you use them to classify regular content items, your site will automatically be set up with taxonomy listing pages for each term; each of these pages lists all of the content items that are classified with that term. For example, if you created several recipes that all had carrots as an ingredient, you might see something like this on the Carrots taxonomy listing page:

Carrots

Fresh Carrots

Serve multi-colored carrots on a plate for dinner.

[Read more](#)

Green Salad

Chop up your favorite vegetables and put them in a bowl.

[Read more](#)

Related topics

- [#### 6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"](#).
- The listing pages are views, which are covered in [### 9, ##### #### # # ##### # # Views](#).

Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#) from "[Organizing content with taxonomies](#)" and "[About taxonomies](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

6.6. Setting Up a Taxonomy

Goal

Create an Ingredients vocabulary and add it to the Recipe content type as a field that can contain an unlimited number of values and that allows adding new terms to the vocabulary.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # #####"#####"](#)
- [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

Site prerequisites

The Recipe content type must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Taxonomy* (*admin/structure/taxonomy*). You will see the *Tags* vocabulary that was created with the core Standard installation profile.

2. Click *Add vocabulary*, and fill in the values below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Name	The name of the vocabulary	Ingredients

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Description	A brief note about the vocabulary	(Leave blank)

Add vocabulary ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Taxonomy](#)

Name *

Description

Save

3. Click *Save*. You will be taken to the *Ingredients* page, which shows a list of all the terms in this vocabulary.

Ingredients ☆

List

Edit

Manage fields

Manage form display

Manage display

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Taxonomy](#) » [Ingredients](#)

✓ Created new vocabulary *Ingredients*.

You can reorganize the terms in *Ingredients* using their drag-and-drop handles, and group terms under a parent term by sliding them under and to the right of the parent.

+ Add term

[Show row weights](#)

NAME

WEIGHT

OPERATIONS

No terms available. [Add term](#).

4. Click *Add term*. Enter "Butter" in the *Name* field. Click *Save*.

Add term ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Taxonomy](#) » [Ingredients](#)

Name *

The term name.

Description

B **I** Format ▾ Source

Text format Basic HTML ▾ [About text formats ?](#)

A description of the term.

▸ **RELATIONS**

URL alias

Specify an alternative path by which this data can be accessed. For example, type "/about" when writing an about page.

Save

5. You will receive a confirmation about the term you created. Add more terms. For example, "Eggs" and "Milk".
6. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content Types* (*admin/structure/types*). Click *Manage fields* for your Recipe content type.
7. Click *Add field*, and enter values from the table below. Click *Save and continue*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Add a new field	Select the field type	Reference > Taxonomy term
Label	The title to give the field	Ingredients

Add field ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Recipe](#) » [Manage fields](#)

Add a new field

Taxonomy term ▼

or

Re-use an existing field

- Select an existing field - ▼

Label *

Machine name: field_ingredients [\[Edit\]](#)

Save and continue

8. On the following configuration screen, enter the values from the table below. Click *Save field settings*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Type of item to reference	The type of entity that is referenced by the field	Taxonomy term
Allowed number of values	The number of values a user can enter	Unlimited

These settings apply to the *Ingredients* field everywhere it is used. These settings impact the way that data is stored in the database and cannot be changed once data has been created.

Type of item to reference *

Taxonomy term ▼

Allowed number of values

Unlimited ▼

Save field settings

9. On the following configuration screen, enter the values from the table below. Click *Save settings*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Help text	Help shown to users creating content	Enter ingredients that site visitors might want to search for
Reference type > Reference method	Select the method used to choose allowed values	Default

Field name	Explanation	Value
Reference type > Available Vocabularies	Select the vocabulary to choose allowed values from	Ingredients
Reference type > Create referenced entities if they don't already exist	Whether new ingredient terms can be created from the content editing form	Checked

Label *

Ingredients

Help text

Enter ingredients that site visitors might want to search for

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.

Allowed HTML tags: <a> <big> <code> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <sub> <sup> <tt> <p>

This field supports tokens.

Required field

▶ **DEFAULT VALUE**

▼ **REFERENCE TYPE**

Reference method *

Default

Create referenced entities if they don't already exist

Available Vocabularies *

Ingredients

Tags

[Save settings](#)

[Delete](#)

10. Click *Save settings*. You will be taken back to the *Manage Fields* page. A message will be displayed saying that the configuration for *Ingredients* is complete.

Manage fields ☆

[Edit](#) [Manage fields](#) [Manage form display](#) [Manage display](#)

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Recipe

✓ Saved *Ingredients* configuration.

[+ Add field](#)

LABEL	MACHINE NAME	FIELD TYPE	OPERATIONS
Body	body	Text (formatted, long, with summary)	Edit
Ingredients	field_ingredients	Entity reference	Edit
Main image	field_main_image	Image	Edit

Attributions

Written and edited by [Bob Snodgrass](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

6.7. Adding a Reference Field

Goal

Add a reference field so that recipes can be linked to the vendor that has submitted it.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.4, "Concept: Reference Fields"](#)
- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)

Site prerequisites

The Recipe and Vendor content types must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* (*admin/structure/types*). Then click *Manage fields* in the dropdown button for the Recipe content type. The *Manage fields* page appears.
2. Click *Add field*. The *Add field* page appears. Fill in the fields as shown below. Click *Save and continue*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Add a new field	Option to specify the field type	Reference > Content
Label	The title you want to give the field	Submitted by

Add field ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Recipe](#) » [Manage fields](#)

Add a new field

Content ▼

or

Re-use an existing field

- Select an existing field - ▼

Label *

Submitted by

Machine name: field_submitted_by [Edit]

[Save and continue](#)

3. The page Submitted by appears which lets you set the allowed number of values. Fill in the fields as shown below. Click *Save field settings*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Type of item to reference	Option to select the type of referenced item	Content
Allowed number of values	Specify the count of values associated with the field	Limited, ¹

Submitted by ☆

[Edit](#)

[Field settings](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Content types](#) » [Recipe](#) » [Manage fields](#) » [Submitted by](#)

These settings apply to the *Submitted by* field everywhere it is used. These settings impact the way that data is stored in the database and cannot be changed once data has been created.

Type of item to reference *

Content ▼

Allowed number of values

Limited ▼ 1

[Save field settings](#)

4. The page *Submitted by settings for Recipe* appears which allows you to configure the field. Fill in the fields as shown below. Click *Save settings*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Label	Title shown for this field on the page	Submitted by
Help text	Brief text aiding the person creating content	Choose the vendor that submitted this recipe
Required field	Whether a value has to be provided or not	Checked
Reference method	Option to select reference method	Default
Content types	Specify the content type	Vendor
Sort by	Sorting field	Title
Sort direction	Sorting order	Ascending

Help text

Choose the vendor that submitted this recipe

Instructions to present to the user below this field on the editing form.
 Allowed HTML tags: <a> <big> <code> <i> <ins> <pre> <q> <small> <sub> <sup> <tt> <p>

 This field supports tokens.

Required field

▼ DEFAULT VALUE

The default value for this field, used when creating new content.

Submitted by

▼ REFERENCE TYPE

Reference method *

Default

Create referenced entities if they don't already exist

Content types *

Basic page

Recipe

Vendor

Sort by

Vendor name

Sort direction *

Ascending

[Save settings](#) [Delete](#)

5. The Submitted by field has been added to the content type.

Manage fields ☆

[Edit](#)
[Manage fields](#)
[Manage form display](#)
[Manage display](#)

Home » Administration » Structure » Content types » Recipe

✓ Saved Submitted by configuration.

[+ Add field](#)

LABEL	MACHINE NAME	FIELD TYPE	OPERATIONS
Body	body	Text (formatted, long, with summary)	Edit ▼
Ingredients	field_ingredients	Entity reference	Edit ▼
Main image	field_main_image	Image	Edit ▼
Submitted by	field_submitted_by	Entity reference	Edit ▼

Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

6.8. Concept: Forms and Widgets

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)

What are forms and widgets?

The content management system software that your site is running allows administrators to edit content and configure settings online, using various web *forms*. In particular, *content editing forms* are used to edit your site's content, and they are configurable by administrators; settings configuration forms are provided by modules and cannot themselves be configured.

The data in your site's content is stored in one or more fields that are attached to the content type and/or sub-type. When you configure the content editing form for each content sub-type, you can:

- Select a *widget* for each field. A widget defines the method used to enter the data for the field. For example, a taxonomy term can be chosen using an autocomplete field, a select list, or a tags-style field that lets editors add new tags automatically.
- Configure widget settings. For example, you can choose the size of a plain-text entry field.

- Hide one or more fields from the editing form.
- Reorder the fields.

In principle, you can also have multiple content editing forms available for each content subtype. This feature is rarely used, however; the only exception in common use is for the user profile fields: you can use different forms for user registration and user editing. For example, you might have a limited set of fields shown when users first register on the site, and more fields shown later on when they edit their profiles.

Related topics

- [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#)
- [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#)

Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

6.9. Changing Content Entry Forms

Goal

Change the Recipe form to use a different widget to enter terms in the Ingredients field.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#)
- [#### 6.8, "Concept: Forms and Widgets"](#)

Site prerequisites

The Recipe content type must exist, and it must have an Ingredients taxonomy term reference field. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#) and [#### 6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content > Add content > Recipe (node/add/recipe)* to look at the content entry form that is set up by default. Notice how you have to enter ingredients one by one, instead of having a more compact format.
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)*. Then click *Manage form display* on the dropdown button for the Recipe content type. The *Manage form display* page appears.
3. For the Ingredients field, select *Autocomplete (Tags style)* in the *Widget* column.

FIELD	WIDGET	
+ Recipe name	Textfield	Textfield size: 60
+ Authored by	Autocomplete	Autocomplete matching: Contains Textfield size: 60 No placeholder
+ Authored on	Datetime Timestamp	
+ Promoted to front page	Single on/off checkbox	Use field label: Yes
+ Sticky at top of lists	Single on/off checkbox	Use field label: Yes
+ URL alias	URL alias	
+ Body	Text area with a summary	Number of rows: 9 Number of summary rows: 3
+ Main image	Image	Preview image style: Thumbnail (100×100) Progress indicator: throbber
+ Ingredients	Autocomplete (Tags style)	Autocomplete matching: Contains Textfield size: 60 No placeholder
+ Submitted by	Autocomplete	Autocomplete matching: Contains Textfield size: 60 No placeholder
Disabled		
<i>No field is hidden.</i>		

Save

- Click *Save*.
- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content > Add content > Recipe (node/add/recipe)* to verify the changed behavior of the content form. The Ingredients field is now a single text field that accepts multiple values.

Create Recipe ☆

Home » Node » Add content

Recipe name *

Body (Edit summary)

B I       Format Source

Text format Basic HTML About text formats ?

Main image *

Browse... No file selected.

One file only.
5 MB limit.
Allowed types: png gif jpg jpeg.
Images must be larger than **600x600** pixels.

Ingredients

Enter ingredients that site visitors might want to search for

Submitted by *

Choose the vendor that submitted this recipe

Save and publish Preview

Last saved: Not saved yet

Author: admin

Create new revision

Revision log message

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

▶ **URL PATH SETTINGS**

▶ **AUTHORING INFORMATION**

▶ **PROMOTION OPTIONS**

6. Create two Recipe content items (see [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#)), such as recipes for "Green Salad" and "Fresh Carrots". Make sure all the fields have values, including images, ingredients, and submitted by (set this to one of the Vendor content items you created in [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)).

Expand your understanding

Change the main site Contact form by navigating in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Contact forms*. For instance, you may want to hide the *Send yourself a copy* or *Language* fields.

Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

6.10. Concept: View Modes and Formatters

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)

What is a View mode?

How an entity (such as content, a user or a comment) is displayed, depends on the context in which it is shown. This context is known as a *view mode*. Examples of view modes are:

- a full page of the content with all the field values
- a teaser of the content with a thumbnail image and a *Read more* link
- a full user profile with a zoomable portrait photo
- a user avatar with username and a link to the profile

Every view mode can be configured through the administration pages. To see the configuration options for the view modes of the Recipe content type, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)* and click *Manage display* from the dropdown button. In each view mode, all fields can be hidden or displayed, and if they are displayed, you can choose and configure the field formatter.

What is a field formatter?

A field formatter is a setting for displaying the field values. For example, long text fields can be displayed trimmed or full-length, and taxonomy term reference fields can be displayed in plain text or linked to the taxonomy term page. Consult the *Manage display* page to see the field formatters for the fields of the Recipe content type.

Related topics

- [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "View modes"](#)

Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborg](#) from "[View modes](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

6.11. Changing Content Display

Goal

Make the content items more readable, accessible, and visibly attractive by reordering the fields, hiding labels, and tuning the output of the fields.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#)

Site prerequisites

The Vendor content type must exist, it must have Main Image and Vendor URL fields, and your site must have at least one Vendor content item. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

Steps

1. Find and view a Vendor content item you created in [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#). Notice that there are several things that could be done to improve how the page looks:
 - The Main Image and Vendor URL fields should not have labels.
 - The order of the fields should be changed so that the image comes first.
 - The image should be smaller.
2. To fix the first two problems, and update some additional settings, in the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types* ([admin/structure/types](#)). Then click *Manage display* in the dropdown button for the Vendor content type.

Content types ☆

Home » Administration » Structure

[+ Add content type](#)

NAME	DESCRIPTION	OPERATIONS
Basic page	Use <i>basic pages</i> for your static content, such as an 'About us' page.	Manage fields
Recipe	Recipe submitted by a vendor	Manage fields
Vendor	Information about a vendor	Manage fields Manage form display Manage display Edit Delete

3. Under the *Label* column, select *Hidden* for Main image. Do the same for Vendor URL.

[Show row weights](#)

FIELD	LABEL	FORMAT		
+	Links	Visible		
+	Body	- Hidden -	Default	
+	Vendor URL	- Hidden -	Link	Link text trimmed to 80 characters ⚙
+	Main image	- Hidden -	Image	Original image ⚙
Disabled				
No field is hidden.				

4. Click the gear for the Vendor URL field. Clear the *Trim link text length* setting. Links will no longer have a trim length. Check the *Open link in new window* checkbox. Now, when the link is clicked, it will open in a new browser window. Click *Update*.

Format settings: **Link**

Trim link text length

characters

Leave blank to allow unlimited link text lengths.

URL only

Show URL as plain text

Add rel="nofollow" to links

Open link in new window

Update **Cancel**

5. Drag the cross arrows next to the field items to reorder as Main image, *Body*, Vendor URL, and *Links*.

⚠ *You have unsaved changes.

FIELD	LABEL	FORMAT	
+	Main image	- Hidden -	Image Original image
+	Body	- Hidden -	Default
+	Vendor URL	- Hidden -	Link Link text not trimmed Open link in new window
+	Links		Visible

Disabled

No field is hidden.

6. Click *Save*.

7. Find the Vendor content item from step ¹ again, and verify that the updates have been made.
8. Repeat similar steps to manage the display of the Recipe content type fields.

Expand your understanding

- Make the main image smaller. See [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#).
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

Related concepts

[#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)

Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Specify how fields are displayed"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Rearrange the order of fields"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "View modes"](#)

Attributions

Written by [Ann Greazel](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#).

6.12. Concept: Image Styles

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

What are image styles?

Image styles allow you to upload a single image but display it in several ways; each display variation, or *image style*, is the result of applying one or more *effects* to the original image.

As an example, you might upload a high-resolution image with a ^{4:3} aspect ratio, and display it scaled down, square cropped, or black-and-white (or any combination of these effects). The core software provides a way to do this efficiently:

1. Configure an image style with the desired effects on the *Image styles* page (*admin/config/media/image-styles*).
2. The effects will be applied the first time a particular image is requested in that style.
3. The resulting image is saved.
4. The next time that same style is requested, the saved image is retrieved without the need to recalculate the effects.

The core software provides several effects that you can use to define styles; others may be provided by contributed modules.

Visit the *Image styles* page via the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Media > Image styles* (*admin/config/media/image-styles*) to see the image styles that are defined by default.

Related topics

- [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#)
- [#### 6.14, "Concept: Responsive Image Styles"](#)
- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8"](#)

Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), from "[Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

6.13. Setting Up an Image Style

Goal

Add an image style and use it to display images on Vendor pages.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"](#)
- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)

Site prerequisites

- Vendor and Recipe content types must exist. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).
- Main image fields must exist for both content types. See [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#).
- Content items must exist for both content types. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Media > Image styles* (*admin/config/media/image-styles*).
2. Click *Add image style*.
3. Enter the name *Extra medium (300x200)*
4. Click *Create new style*. The page *Edit style Extra medium (300x200)* appears.
5. In the *Effect* table, select *Scale and crop*. Click *Add*.
6. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Value
Width	300
Height	200

7. Click *Add effect*. The image style is saved with the chosen effects.

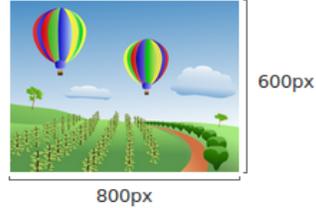
Edit style *Extra medium (300x200)* ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Configuration](#) » [Media](#) » [Image styles](#)

✓ The image effect was successfully applied.

Preview

original (view actual size)



Extra medium (300x200) (view actual size)

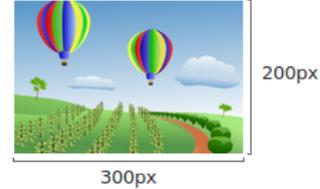


Image style name *

Machine name: extra_medium_300x200 [\[Edit\]](#)

[Show row weights](#)

EFFECT

✚ Scale and crop 300×200

[Edit](#) ▼

✚

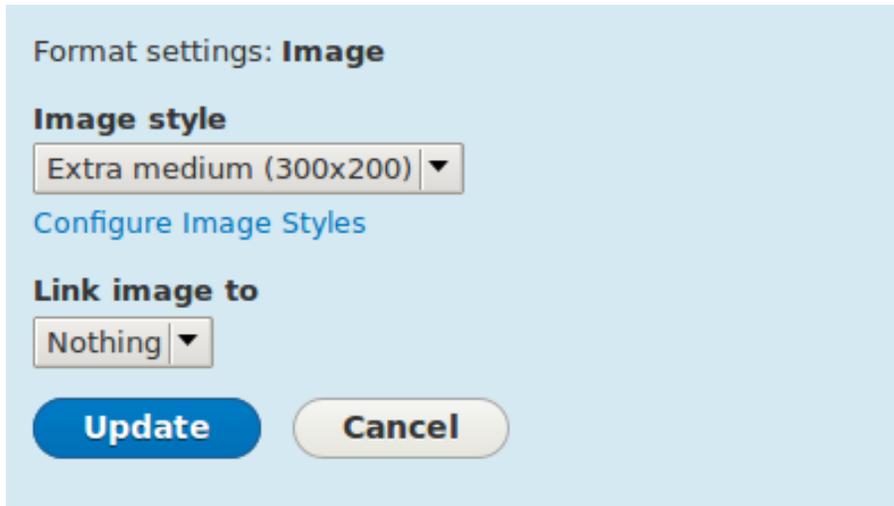
[Add](#)

[Update style](#)

[Delete](#)

8. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)*.
9. Click *Manage display* in the *Operations* dropdown for the Vendor content type. The *Manage display* page (*admin/structure/types/manage/vendor/display*) appears.
10. Ensure that the secondary tab *Default* is selected.
11. Click the cogwheel next to *Main image* for the configuration options.
12. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Value
Image style	Extra medium (300x200)
Link image to	Nothing



13. Click *Update*.
14. Click *Save*. The new image style will be used while displaying Vendor content.
15. Open a Vendor content item and verify that it now shows up with the scaled-down image. See [#### 5.3, "Editing a Content Item"](#) for information on how to locate an existing content item.
16. Repeat steps 8-15 for the Recipe content type.

Related concepts

- [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)
- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)
- [#### 6.14, "Concept: Responsive Image Styles"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8"](#)

Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#) from ["Working with images in Drupal 7 and 8"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

6.14. Concept: Responsive Image Styles

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 6.11, "Changing Content Display"](#)
- [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#)

What are responsive image styles?

The core Responsive Image module provides responsive image styles. This allows you to have images in your website that are specifically sized for different screen sizes. This is useful, for example, to make your site load faster on mobile devices because image sizes are optimized for smaller screens.

A responsive image style is a mapping between images styles and breakpoints. Breakpoints are the points where a responsive design needs to change in order to respond to different screen sizes. Responsive image styles can only be used if the breakpoints are defined in the theme.

When a responsive image style is defined, it can be used in the display settings for Image fields. This allows the site to display responsive images using the HTML5 picture tag.

Related topics

[#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#)

Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Responsive web design"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Responsive images in Drupal 8"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with breakpoints in Drupal 8"](#)

Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborg](#) from [Responsive images in Drupal 8](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

6.15. **Concept: Text Formats and Editors**

What are text formats and filters?

Text formats change how HTML tags and other text are processed and displayed on your site.

Text formats are composed of a series of *filters*, each of which transforms text. When users create content, a text format is associated with the content, and the full, original text is stored in the database. The content is then passed through the filters in the text format before it becomes output on the site.

The core Filter module provides text format functionality, and the core Standard installation profile sets up *Basic HTML*, *Restricted HTML*, and *Full HTML* text formats. Each text format has an associated permission, so that you can allow only trusted users to use permissive text formats. This restricts untrusted users to text formats like *Basic HTML*, which filters out dangerous HTML tags.

What are the editors associated with text formats?

Each text format can be associated with an editor, such as a visual WYSIWYG (What You See Is What You Get) HTML editor. The core Text Editor module provides the ability to associate editors with text formats, and to configure the editors (such as adding and removing buttons from their toolbars). The core CKEditor module provides the industry-standard editor known as CKEditor, so that it can be used to edit HTML content on your site.

What is cross-site scripting?

Cross-site scripting (XSS) is a security vulnerability typically found in websites. In a site that is not well protected, malicious users can enter script into web pages that are viewed by other users (for example, in a comment or in the body of a page). A cross-site scripting vulnerability may be used by attackers to login as another user. It is important to configure the text formats of your website to prevent such abuse.

Related topics

[#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)

Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Filter module: text formats that filter user input"](#)

- [Wikipedia page "Cross-site scripting"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

6.16. Configuring Text Formats and Editors

Goal

Add a horizontal rule tag to the *Basic HTML* text format, and a corresponding button to its editor configuration.

Prerequisite knowledge

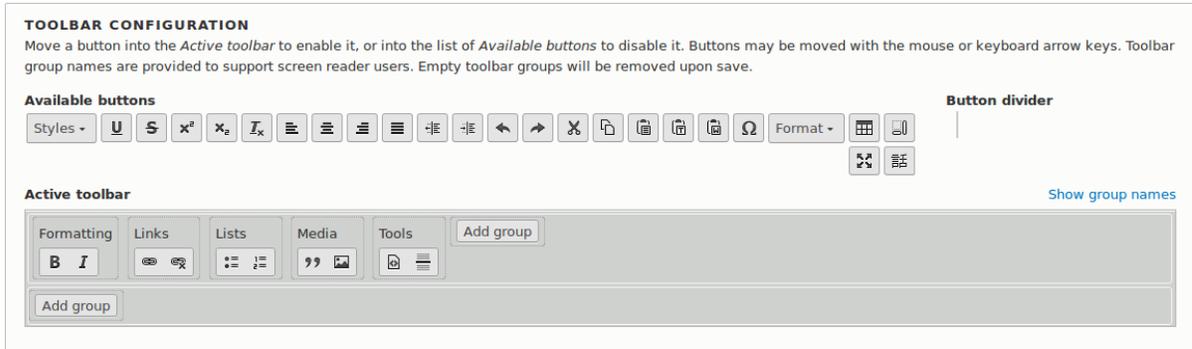
[#### 6.15, "Concept: Text Formats and Editors"](#)

Site prerequisites

- The core Filter, Editor, and CKEditor modules must be installed. They are installed on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.
- The *Basic HTML* text format must exist. This is created on your site when you install with the core Standard installation profile.

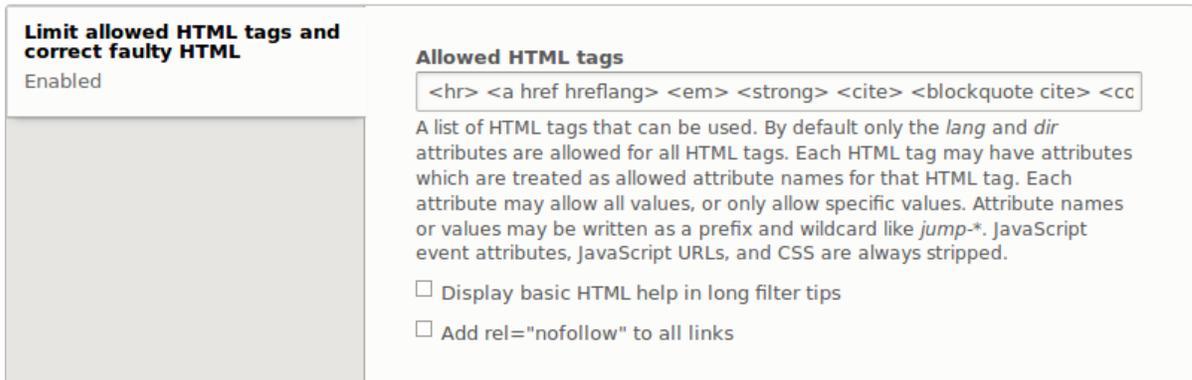
Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Content authoring > Text formats and editors* (*admin/config/content/formats*). The *Text formats and editors* page appears.
2. Click *Configure* for the *Basic HTML* text format. The *Basic HTML* page appears.
3. Note that *CKEditor* is selected in the *Text editor* field. This allows you to configure the editor's toolbar.
4. Drag the *horizontal rule* button from *Available buttons* to *Tools* in *Active toolbar*. You may need to click the *Show group names* link to see the *Tools* group name.



5. Note that you can change the *Filter processing order*.
6. In the field *Allowed HTML tags*, add `<hr>` to what is already present.

Filter settings



7. Click *Save configuration*. You will be taken back to the *Text formats and editors* page. A message will be displayed saying that the text format has been updated.



Expand your understanding

If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

ی ربراکی اهاب اسرحتی ریدم 7. ل صرف

7.1. Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions

What are Users?

Anyone who visits your website is a *user*, including you. There are three groups of users:

- Users who are not logged in, or *anonymous users*
- Users who are logged in, or *authenticated users*
- The administrative user account that was automatically created when you installed your site, or User 1. See [#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#).

What are Permissions?

The ability to do actions on your site (including viewing content, editing content, and changing configuration) is governed by *permissions*. Each permission has a name (such as *View published content*) and covers one action or a small subset of actions. A user must be granted a permission in order to do the corresponding action on the site; permissions are defined by the modules that provide the actions.

What are Roles?

Rather than assigning individual permissions directly to each user, permissions are grouped into *roles*. You can define one or more roles on your site, and then grant permissions to each role. The permissions granted to authenticated and anonymous users are contained in the *Authenticated user* and *Anonymous user* roles, and depending on the installation profile you used when you installed your site, there may also be an *Administrator* role that is automatically assigned all permissions on your site.

Each user account on your site is automatically given the *Authenticated user* role, and may optionally be assigned one or more additional roles. When you assign a role to a user account, the user will have all the permissions of the role when logged in.

It is a good practice to make several roles on your site. In the farmers market site example, you might want the following roles:

- A Vendor role that allows vendors to edit their own vendor listing page
- A Content editor role for editing the general farmers market pages
- A User manager role for managing the vendor accounts
- The *Administrator* role that was installed with your site, for expert users to manage the site configuration

Related topics

- [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#)
- [#### 7.5, "Assigning Permissions to a Role"](#)
- [#### 7.6, "Changing a User's Roles"](#)
- [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#)
- [#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#)
- [#### 7.7, "Assigning Authors to Content"](#)

Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Users, roles and permissions"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Managing Users"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "User Roles"](#)

Attributions

Adapted by [Mark LaCroix](#), [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) from "[User Roles](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

7.2. Concept: The User ¹ Account

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

What is the user ¹ account?

During the installation of your site, you created the first user account. Each user account internally has a numeric user ID, and since the ID of this user is one, it is commonly referred to as the *user 1* account. This user account is special, because independent of what roles it is assigned, someone logged in as user ¹ has permission to do all actions on the site, including viewing and editing all content, editing any user account, changing site configuration, installing and uninstalling modules, and running the update script.

Because of this level of permission, some people refer to this account as the *root user*, similar to the "root" user account that has full administrative permissions in Linux and other operating systems.

It is usually better to make separate accounts for each administrative user, giving them the *Administrator* role, rather than having all administrative users log in using the user 1 account.

There are several reasons for this:

- Some actions and updates on the site are logged, and if everyone uses the same account, it is difficult to know who did them if you have questions.
- The *Administrator* role permissions can be modified to be safer than the full permissions of the user ¹ account, so that people do not inadvertently change site features that shouldn't be changed.
- People's responsibilities on a site may change over time. With ordinary user accounts, this can be mirrored in permissions by assigning or unassigning roles to their user accounts. If they are all using the user ¹ account, this is more difficult.
- On some sites, the author of content or comments is displayed or tracked, and if everyone uses the same account to create content, it is difficult to know who created the content.

It is not possible to delete the user ¹ account from the administrative user interface. It would be possible to do with a database query, but it could cause problems in your site and is not advisable.

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Accounts and roles"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Mark LaCroix](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

7.3. Creating a Role

Goal

Create a Vendor role to allow some - but not all - users to perform specific tasks.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People > Roles (admin/people/roles)*.
2. You will find default roles *Anonymous user*, *Authenticated user*, and *Administrator* already present.

Roles ☆

List Permissions Roles

Home » Administration » People

A role defines a group of users that have certain privileges. These privileges are defined on the [Permissions page](#). Here, you can define the names and the display sort order of the roles on your site. It is recommended to order roles from least permissive (for example, Anonymous user) to most permissive (for example, Administrator user). Users who are not logged in have the Anonymous user role. Users who are logged in have the Authenticated user role, plus any other roles granted to their user account.

[+ Add role](#)

[Show row weights](#)

NAME	OPERATIONS
Anonymous user	Edit
Authenticated user	Edit
Administrator	Edit

[Save](#)

3. Click *Add Role* to add a custom role.
4. Type *Vendor* in the *Role name* field. Click *Save*.

Add role ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [People](#) » [Roles](#)

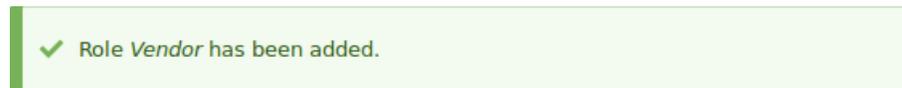
Role name *

 Machine name: vendor [Edit]

The name for this role. Example: "Moderator", "Editorial board", "Site architect".

Save

5. You will see the message "Role Vendor has been added." displayed at the top of the page.



Expand your understanding

- [#### 7.5, "Assigning Permissions to a Role"](#)
- [#### 7.6, "Changing a User's Roles"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "User Roles"](#)

Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Jack Probst](#), [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Joe Shindelar](#) from "[User Roles](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

7.4. Creating a User Account

Goal

Create Vendor user accounts for Sweet Honey and Happy Farm vendors.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

- [#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#)
- [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#)

Site prerequisites

The Vendor role must exist on your site. See [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People (admin/people)*.
2. Click *Add user*.

Add user ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [People](#)

This web page allows administrators to register new users. Users' email addresses and usernames must be unique.

Email address

A valid email address. All emails from the system will be sent to this address. The email address is not made public and will only be used if you wish to receive a new password or wish to receive certain news or notifications by email.

Username *

Several special characters are allowed, including space, period (.), hyphen (-), apostrophe ('), underscore (_), and the @ sign.

Password *

Password strength:

Confirm password *

Passwords match:

Provide a password for the new account in both fields.

Status

- Blocked
 Active

Roles

- Authenticated user
 Administrator
 Vendor
 Notify user of new account

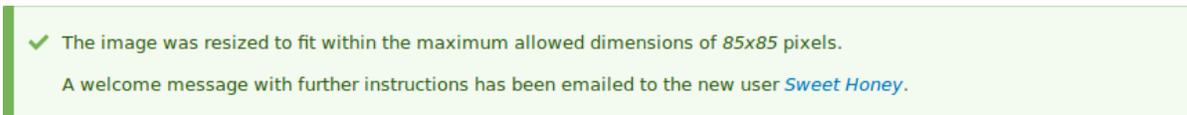
Picture

3. Fill in the form fields. See the table below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Email address	A valid email address for the vendor. All emails from the system will be sent to this address. The email address is not made public.	honey@example.com
Username	A username for the vendor that they will use to sign in or author content items. Spaces are allowed; punctuation is not allowed except for periods,	Sweet Honey

Field name	Explanation	Example value
	hyphens, apostrophes, and underscores.	
Password	A password the vendor will use to sign in to the site. You can see how safe the password is on the <i>Password strength</i> gauge. You also get tips on how to make it safer.	(Make a secure password)
Confirm password	Type the same password to avoid any typing mistakes.	(Repeat password)
Status	Set the status of the user account. <i>Blocked</i> users will not be able to sign in.	Active
Roles	Set the role of the user account.	Vendor
Notify user of new account	Whether or not to send a notification to the vendor's email address.	Checked
Picture	Click <i>Browse</i> and select a picture to upload. Pay attention to size restrictions.	Photo of the vendor
Contact settings	Enable or disable the display of a contact form for the account.	Checked

4. Click *Create new account*. You will get a notification about the user account creation.



5. Create a second Vendor account for Happy Farm by following the steps above.

Expand your understanding

Create a user account for yourself.

Attributions

Written by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#).

7.5. Assigning Permissions to a Role

Goal

Change the permissions for the Vendor role so that users can create, edit, and delete Recipe and Vendor content, format the content, and contact each other.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

Site prerequisites

The Vendor role must exist on your site. See [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People > Roles (admin/people/roles)*. The *Roles* page appears.
2. Click *Edit permissions* in the dropdown for the Vendor role. The *Edit role* page appears where you can see all the available actions for the website such as, for example, *Post comments* or *Administer blocks*. The available permissions depend on the modules that are installed in the site. Note: Some permissions may have security implications. Be cautious while assigning permissions to roles.
3. Check the boxes for the following permissions, listed by module:

Module	Permission
Contact	Use users' personal contact forms
Filter	Use the Restricted HTML text format
Node	Recipe: Create new content
Node	Recipe: Edit own content
Node	Recipe: Delete own content
Node	Vendor: Edit own content

Module	Permission
Quick Edit	Access in-place editing

PERMISSION	VENDOR
<i>Basic page: View revisions</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Recipe: Create new content</i>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Recipe: Delete any content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Recipe: Delete own content</i>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Recipe: Delete revisions</i> Role requires permission to <i>view revisions</i> and <i>delete rights</i> for nodes in question, or <i>administer nodes</i> .	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Recipe: Edit any content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Recipe: Edit own content</i>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Recipe: Revert revisions</i> Role requires permission <i>view revisions</i> and <i>edit rights</i> for nodes in question, or <i>administer nodes</i> .	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Recipe: View revisions</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Vendor: Create new content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Vendor: Delete any content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Vendor: Delete own content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Vendor: Delete revisions</i> Role requires permission to <i>view revisions</i> and <i>delete rights</i> for nodes in question, or <i>administer nodes</i> .	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Vendor: Edit any content</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Vendor: Edit own content</i>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<i>Vendor: Revert revisions</i> Role requires permission <i>view revisions</i> and <i>edit rights</i> for nodes in question, or <i>administer nodes</i> .	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Vendor: View revisions</i>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Path	

- Click *Save permissions*. You will get a message saying your changes have been saved.

✓ The changes have been saved.

Expand your understanding

- Log in as one of the new users you created in [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#). Verify whether you have the correct permissions.
- [#### 7.6, "Changing a User's Roles"](#)

Related concepts

[#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Managing Users"](#)

Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), [Brian Emery](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), from ["User Roles"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

7.6. Changing a User's Roles

Goal

Change or add roles to a given user, either by editing a single-user or by applying a bulk operation.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

Site prerequisites

The user account that you want to update, and the role you want it to have, must already exist. See [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#), [#### 7.3, "Creating a Role"](#), and [#### 7.5, "Assigning Permissions to a Role"](#).

Steps

Updating the roles using single-user editing method

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People* (*admin/people*).
2. Locate the user 1 account (named "admin") to assign it the *Administrator* role. If it is not immediately visible, use the *Name or email contains* filter, or other filters, to narrow down the list.
3. Click *Edit* to update the user account.

The screenshot shows the 'People' management page. At the top, there are tabs for 'List', 'Permissions', and 'Roles'. Below the tabs, there is a breadcrumb 'Home » Administration' and a '+ Add user' button. A filter section includes a text input for 'Name or email contains', dropdown menus for 'Role' (set to '- Any -'), 'Permission' (set to '- Any -'), and 'Status' (set to '- Any -'). A 'Filter' button is below the filters. An 'Action' dropdown is set to 'Add the Administrator role to the selected users', with an 'Apply to selected items' button. The main table lists users with columns: USERNAME, STATUS, ROLES, MEMBER FOR, LAST ACCESS, and OPERATIONS. The 'admin' user is selected, and its 'Edit' button is circled in red. Below the table is another 'Apply to selected items' button.

USERNAME	STATUS	ROLES	MEMBER FOR	LAST ACCESS	OPERATIONS
Happy Farm	Active	• Vendor	5 seconds	never	Edit
Sweet Honey	Active	• Vendor	8 seconds	never	Edit
admin	Active	• Administrator	11 minutes 6 seconds	2 minutes 37 seconds ago	Edit

4. On the *Edit* page, scroll down to *Roles* section. Check the *Administrator* role for the user account.

Roles

- Authenticated user
- Administrator
- Vendor

5. Click *Save* to update the user account. You should be returned to the *People* page and see a message saying that the changes have been saved.

✓ The changes have been saved.

Updating the roles using bulk editing method

1. If the users Happy Farm and Sweet Honey did not already have the Vendor role, here is how you would add it. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *People (admin/people)*.
2. Locate Vendor user accounts *Sweet Honey* and *Happy Farm* and check them. If they are not immediately visible, use the *Name or email contains* filter, or other filters, to narrow down the list.
3. Select *Add the Vendor role to the selected users* from the *Action* select list.

Action
 Add the Vendor role to the selected users

Apply to selected items

<input type="checkbox"/>	USERNAME	STATUS	ROLES	MEMBER FOR	LAST ACCESS	OPERATIONS
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Happy Farm	Active	• Vendor	12 seconds	never	Edit
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Sweet Honey	Active	• Vendor	14 seconds	never	Edit
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	Active	• Administrator	3 days 2 hours	54 seconds ago	Edit

Apply to selected items

4. Click *Apply to selected items*. You should see a message indicating that the desired changes were made.

✓ Add the Vendor role to the selected users was applied to 2 items.

Attributions

Written by [Chris Dart](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#)

7.7. Assigning Authors to Content

Goal

Assign Vendor content items Happy Farm and Sweet Honey to the corresponding Vendor user accounts, so they can edit their own Vendor profiles on the site.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#)

Site prerequisites

- The Vendor content type must exist, and your site must have at least two Vendor content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- User accounts for at least two vendors must exist. See [#### 7.4, "Creating a User Account"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content (admin/content)*.
2. Find Vendor content item Happy Farm in the list. If it is not immediately visible, you can filter the list by *Published status*, *Content type (Vendor)*, *Title*, or *Language*. Click *Edit* for the Vendor content item you would like to assign an author to.
3. Locate the information block and click *Authoring information*.

Published
Last saved: 08/08/2016 - 14:02
Author: Happy Farm
 Create new revision
Revision log message

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

▶ **URL PATH SETTINGS**

▼ **AUTHORING INFORMATION**

Authored by

The username of the content author.

Authored on

Format: 2016-08-08 14:02:57. Leave blank to use the time of form submission.

▶ **PROMOTION OPTIONS**

4. Start typing the Vendor's user name Happy Farm in the *Authored by* field. The field lists matching user names. Select the Vendor's user name from the list.
5. Click *Save and keep published*.
6. You will get a notification that the Vendor content item has been updated.

✓ Vendor Happy Farm has been updated.

7. Follow these steps again to assign Vendor content item Sweet Honey to the Vendor user account Sweet Honey.

Attributions

Written by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#).

اہا کا ال ب 8. ل صرف

8.1. Concept: Blocks

What is a block?

Blocks are individual pieces of your site's web page layout. They are placed inside the regions (see [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ## ####"](#)) of your theme, and can be created, removed, and rearranged in the *Block layout (admin/structure/block)* administration page. Examples of blocks include the *Who's online* listing, the main navigation menu, and the breadcrumb trail.

The main page content is also a block.

Some modules make new blocks available for placement on your site. For example, when the core Search module is installed and configured, it provides a block that contains a search form. You may also create and place your own custom blocks.

Each block has its own configuration settings, which allow you to select which pages of your site will display the block. It is even possible to place multiple copies of a block, each with its own separate configuration and visibility rules.

Related topics

- [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ## ####"](#)
- [#### 8.2, "Creating A Custom Block"](#)
- [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#)

Attributions

Adapted by [Les Lim](#) from "[Working with blocks \(content in regions\)](#)" copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

8.2. Creating A Custom Block

Goal

Create a block showing the hours and location of the farmers market.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)
- [#### 2.1, "#####: ##### ## ## #####"](#)

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Block layout > Custom block library* (*admin/structure/block/block-content*).
2. Click *Add custom block*. The *Add custom block* page appears.
3. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Value
Block description	Hours and location block
Body	Open: Sundays, ⁹ AM to ² PM, April to September Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown Anytown.

Add custom block ☆

Home

Block description *

Hours and location block

A brief description of your block.

Body

B I
🔗
📄
☰
☰
””
🖼️
📄 Source
☰

Text format Basic HTML [About text formats ?](#)

Revision information

New revision Create new revision

Revision log message

Briefly describe the changes you have made.

Save

4. Click *Save*. A message appears indicating the block has been saved.

Expand your understanding

- Edit the content of your custom block. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Block layout > Custom block library* (*admin/structure/block/block-content*). Find your block in the list and click *Edit* to make changes.
- Place the block you created in the sidebar. See [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#) for details.

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Working with blocks \(content in regions\)"](#)

Attributions

Adapted by [Jacob Redding](#) and [Boris Doesborg](#) from [Working with blocks \(content in regions\)](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

8.3. Placing a Block in a Region

Goal

Place the Opening hours and location block in the website's sidebar.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)

Site prerequisites

- The core Bartik theme must be installed and set as default. See [#### 4.6, "Configuring the Theme"](#).
- The Opening hours and location block must exist. See [#### 8.2, "Creating A Custom Block"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Block layout (admin/structure/block)*. The *Block layout* page appears, listing the theme's regions.
2. Ensure that in the secondary tab the core Bartik theme is selected. Block placement is defined per theme.
3. Locate the region *Sidebar second* in the list and click *Place block* next to it. The *Place block* window appears, listing all the blocks.

- Locate the block Opening hours and location and click *Place block* next to it. The *Configure block* window appears. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Value
Title	Hours and location
Display title	Checked
Region	Sidebar second

You can also hide or display the block on specific pages. In the case of the Farmer’s market website you do not set any of these configuration options because you want to show the block everywhere.

Configure block ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Block layout](#) » [Configure block](#)

✓ Basic block *Hours and location block* has been created.

Block description: Hours and location block

Title *

Machine name: hours_location [Edit]

Display title

Visibility

<p>Content types</p> <p>Not restricted</p>	<p>Content types</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Basic page</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Recipe</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Vendor</p>
<p>Pages</p> <p>Not restricted</p>	
<p>Roles</p> <p>Not restricted</p>	

Region

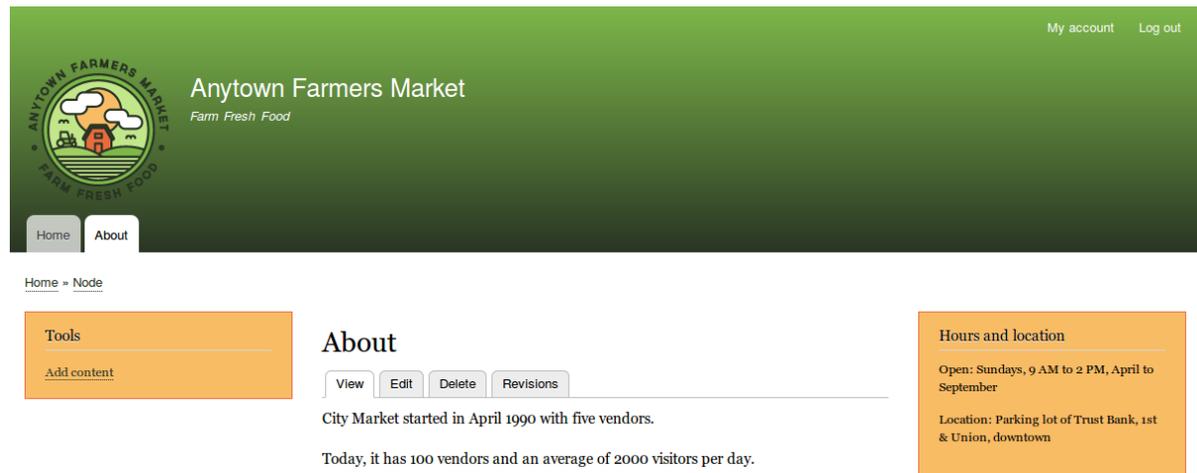
▼

Select the region where this block should be displayed.

Save block

- Click *Save block*. The *Block layout* page appears. You can drag blocks to change the order in which they will appear.
- Verify that the Opening hours and location block is listed in the *Sidebar second* region, and click *Save blocks*.

The block has been placed on the sidebar of all pages that use the core Bartik theme.



Expand your understanding

- Remove the *Powered by Drupal* block from the *Footer fifth* region by setting the region to *- None -*.
- Remove the *Tools* block from the *Sidebar first* region by setting the region to *- None -*. This block is only visible to logged-in users.
- Place the *User login* block in a region.
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

زا هدافتسا اب تسرهف داجیا 9. ل صرف

Views

9.1. Concept: Uses of Views

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.4, "#####"](#)
- [#### 2.3, "##### # #####"](#)

What is a view?

A *view* is a listing of content on a website. The core Views module handles the display of views, and the core Views UI module allows you to create and edit them in the administrative interface. When you define views, you are interested in taking data from your website and displaying it to the user.

What types of data can be displayed using views?

You can create views to output practically any content entity that is stored in the system. For example, you can create the following lists for the farmers market site:

- Lists of vendors
- Lists of recipes
- Lists of the most recent content on the site
- Lists of users on the site

What are the ways data can be output using views?

A listing created by a view can be in any of the following forms:

- Table with sortable fields
- Grid layouts
- Teasers or pictures that link to articles
- Blocks
- JSON output

- RSS feeds
- Calendars
- On-screen slideshows

Related topics

- [#### 9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"](#)
- [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Michael Lenahan](#) at [erdfisch](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

9.2. Concept: The Parts of a View

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 2.4, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)
- [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#)
- [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#)

What are the parts of a view?

When you are editing a view in the administrative interface, you will see the following parts (or sections), which allow you to specify what data to output, in what order, and in what format:

Display

Each view can have one or more displays, each of which produces one type of output. Options for display types include:

Page

Makes output at a particular URL, for the main page content at that URL.

Block

Makes output in a block, which can be placed on pages.

Feed

Makes an RSS or another type of feed.

Attachment

Makes output that you can attach to another display.

Format

Depending on the display type, you can choose to output your data in a table, grid, HTML list, or another format. Some formats also give you a second choice that lets you output either rendered entities or fields; other formats do not give you this choice (for example, if you use a table format, you must always use fields).

Fields

Depending on the format choice, you may be able to choose which content fields are output. For example, if you were making a view of recipe content items, in a block display you might show only the recipe names, while in a full page display you might also show an image field because you have more space.

Filter criteria

Filters limit the data to be output, based on criteria such as whether the content has been published or not, the type of content, or a field value. For instance, to make a view of recipe content items, you would need to filter to the Recipe content type, and to published recipes. Filters can also be *exposed*, which means that users will have a form where they

can choose their own filter values. You might use this on a Recipe page to let users filter for recipes with certain ingredients.

Sort criteria

Defines the order to present the output, which can be based on any content field.

Contextual filters

Contextual filters are like regular filters, except that the values come from the *context* of the view display, such as the full URL of the page being displayed, the current date or time, or some other value that can be detected by the view calculation.

Relationships

Relationships allow you to expand what is displayed in your view, by relating the base content being displayed to other content entities. Relationships are created using fields on the base content that relate it to the other content; one example is that all regular content items have an author field, which references the user account of the person who authored the content. Once you have created a relationship, you can display fields from the referenced entity in the view.

Related topics

[#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

9.3. Creating a Content List View

Goal

Create a page listing vendors that will be automatically updated whenever a vendor is added, deleted, or updated on the site.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)
- [#### 9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"](#)

Site prerequisites

- The core Views and Views UI modules must be installed. These are installed for you when you install with the core Standard installation profile.
- The Vendor content type must exist, with URL and Main image fields. Your site must have a couple of Vendor content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- The *Medium* (220x220) image style must be defined. This is created on your site when you install the core Image module (installed with the core Standard installation profile) but can be recreated if deleted. See [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views > Add view (admin/structure/views/add)*. The *Add view* wizard appears.
2. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
View name	Name of the view that will be visible in the administration pages	Vendors
Show	Type of information listed in the view	Content
of type	Specify content type	Vendor
sorted by	List order	Title

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Create a page	Create a page that displays the view	Checked
Page title	Title show above the view	Vendors
Path	Address of the page	vendors
Display format	Type of list	Table
Items to display	Number of items visible on the page	10
Use a pager	Split up the list in several pages if there are more items	Checked
Create a menu link	Add the view page to the menu	Checked
Menu	Menu in which to add the link	Main navigation
Link text	Label of the link in the menu	Vendors

Add view ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Views](#)

VIEW BASIC INFORMATION

View name *
 Machine name: vendors [\[Edit\]](#)

Description

VIEW SETTINGS

Show: of type: tagged with: sorted by:

PAGE SETTINGS

Create a page

Page title

Path

PAGE DISPLAY SETTINGS

Display format:
 of:

Items to display

3. Click *Save and edit*. The view configuration page appears.
4. Click *Add* from the dropdown button in the *Fields* section. The *Add fields* pop-up appears.

5. Enter the word "image" in the search field.
6. Check Main image in the table.
7. Click *Apply*. The *Configure field: Content: Main Image* pop-up appears.
8. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Create a label	Add a label before the field value	Unchecked
Image style	The format of the image	Medium (220x220)
Link image to	Add a link to the content item	Content

9. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
10. Click *Add* from the dropdown button in the *Fields* section. The *Add fields* pop-up appears.
11. Enter the word "body" in the search field.
12. Select *Body* in the table.
13. Click *Apply*. The *Configure field: Content: Body* pop-up appears.
14. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Create a label	Add a label before the field value	Unchecked
Formatter	The presentation of the field value	Summary or trimmed
Trimmed limit:	The number of maximum characters shown	120

15. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
16. Click *Content: Title (Title)* in the *Fields* list. The *Configure field: Content: Title* pop-up appears.
17. Uncheck *Create a label*. This will remove the label that was created by the wizard.
18. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
19. Click *Rearrange* from the dropdown button in the *Fields* section. The *Rearrange fields* pop-up appears.
20. Drag the fields into the right order: Image, Title. Body.

21. Click *Apply*. The view configuration page appears.
22. Optionally, click *Update preview* for a preview.
23. Click *Save*.

Vendors (Content) ☆

Home » Administration » Structure » Views » Vendors » Edit

✓ The view *Vendors* has been saved.

Displays

Page [+ Add](#) Edit view name/description

Display name: Page View Page

TITLE
Title: [Vendors](#)

FORMAT
Format: [Table](#) | [Settings](#)

FIELDS [Add](#)

Content: [Main image](#)

Content: [Title](#)

Content: [Body](#)

FILTER CRITERIA [Add](#)

Content: [Publishing status \(= Yes\)](#)

Content: [Content type \(= Vendor\)](#)

SORT CRITERIA [Add](#)

Content: [Title \(asc\)](#)

PAGE SETTINGS
Path: [/vendors](#)
Menu: [Normal: Vendors](#)
Access: [Permission](#) | [View published content](#)

HEADER [Add](#)

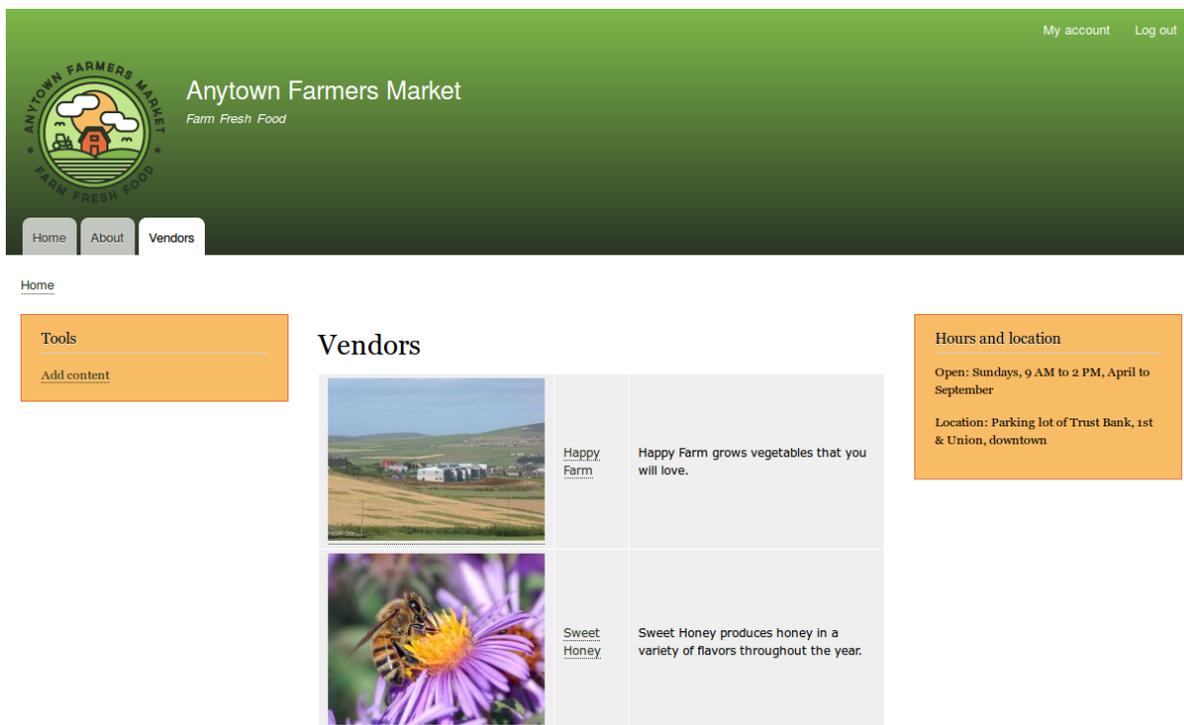
FOOTER [Add](#)

NO RESULTS BEHAVIOR [Add](#)

PAGER
Use pager: [Mini](#) | [Mini pager, 10 items](#)
More link: [No](#)

[Save](#) [Cancel](#)

24. Navigate to the homepage and click *Vendors* from the main navigation to see the result.



Expand your understanding

The link to the view in the main navigation will probably not be in the right place. Change the order of the menu items in the main navigation. See [#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#).

Attributions

Written/edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

9.4. Duplicating a View

Goal

Create a page listing recipes by duplicating the existing Vendors view. Modify the page so that the recipes are displayed in a grid and can be filtered by ingredients.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)

- [#### 9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"](#)
- [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

Site prerequisites

- The Vendor and Recipe content types must exist; both must have Main image fields, and the Recipe content type must have an Ingredients field. Your site must also have a couple of Recipe content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.6, "Setting Up a Taxonomy"](#), [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- The Vendors view must exist. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views (admin/structure/views)*. Find the view "Vendors" and click *Duplicate* in its dropdown button.

The screenshot shows the Drupal Views administration interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'List' and 'Settings'. Below the tabs, there is a breadcrumb trail: 'Home > Administration > Structure'. A '+ Add view' button is visible, along with a search box labeled 'Filter by view name or description'. The main content area displays a table of views under the heading 'Enabled'.

VIEW NAME	DESCRIPTION	TAG	PATH	OPERATIONS
Taxonomy term Displays: <i>Feed, Page</i> Machine name: taxonomy_term	Content belonging to a certain taxonomy term.	default	/taxonomy/term/%feed, /taxonomy/term/%	Edit
Vendors Displays: <i>Page</i> Machine name: vendors			/vendors	Edit, Duplicate, Disable, Delete
Who's new Displays: <i>Block</i> Machine name: who_s_new	Shows a list of the newest user accounts on the site.	default		Edit
Who's online block Displays: <i>Block</i> Machine name: who_s_online	Shows the user names of the most recently active users, and the total number of active users.	default		Edit

2. Name the duplicate "Recipes" and click *Duplicate*. The view configuration page appears.

3. Change the title of the view page to "Recipes" by clicking *Vendors* in the *Title* section. The *Page: The title of this view pop-up* appears. Type in "Recipes". Click *Apply*.

Title

Recipes

This title will be displayed with the view, wherever titles are normally displayed; i.e, as the page title, block title, etc.

Apply

Cancel

4. Change from a table to a grid format by clicking *Table* in the *Format* section. The *Page: How should this view be styled* pop-up appears. Check *Grid* and click *Apply*. The *Page: Style options* pop-up appears. Retain the default values and click *Apply*.
5. Retain only the title and image fields for the Recipes view by clicking *Content: Body* in the *Fields* section. Click *Remove* in the pop-up that appears.
6. Change the content type filter to use the Recipe content type by clicking *Content: Type (=Vendor)* in the *Filter criteria* section. In the *Configure filter criterion: Content: Type* pop-up, check *Recipe* and uncheck *Vendor*. Click *Apply*.
7. Add a further filter that is exposed to visitors by clicking *Add* in the *Filter criteria* section. Search for "ingredients" and check "Ingredients (field_ingredients)". Click *Add and configure filter criteria*.
8. The appearing pop-up offers extra settings on vocabulary and selection type. Click *Apply and continue*. The next pop-up allows you to expose this filter to visitors. Fill in the fields as shown below, and click *Apply*.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Expose this filter to visitors, to allow them to change it	Allow visitors to filter and search	Checked
Required	Whether a value has to be provided or not	Unchecked
Label	Label shown for this filter on the view page	Find recipes using...

Appears in: recipe.

Expose this filter to visitors, to allow them to change it

Filter type to expose

Single filter

Grouped filters

Grouped filters allow a choice between predefined operator|value pairs.

Required

Label

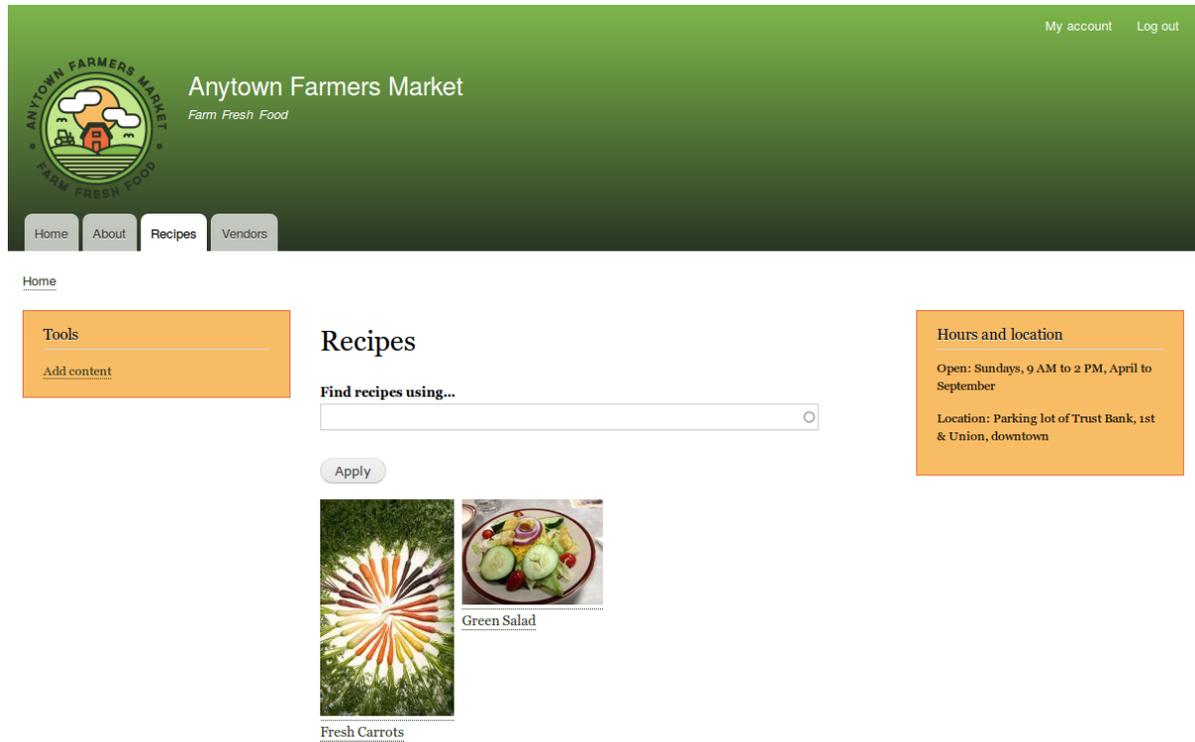
Find recipes using...

Description

9. Change the *Path* label field to "Recipes" by clicking "/vendors" in the *Page settings* section. In the pop-up that appears, enter the path "recipes" and click *Apply*.

Note that when editing a view, you enter paths without the leading "/", unlike on other administrative pages (such as when providing a path to a content item page).

10. Change the menu link title by clicking "Normal: Vendors" in the *Page settings* section. In the pop-up that appears, change the title to "Recipes" and click *Apply*.
11. In order to use Ajax (see [Ajax entry in the Glossary](#)) to make filtering and paging faster for users, click *Advanced* to expand the section for more options. In the *Other* section, change *Use AJAX: No* to "Yes" by clicking *No* and checking *Use AJAX* in the pop-up that appears. Click *Apply*.
12. Click *Save* to save the view.
13. Go back to the home page and click Recipes in the navigation to view the new Recipes page.



Expand your understanding

The link to the view in the main navigation will probably not be in the right place. Change the order of the menu items in the main navigation. See [#### 5.8, "Changing the Order of Navigation"](#).

Related concepts

- [#### 2.5, "##### # # # # #"](#)
- [Ajax entry in the Glossary](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

9.5. Adding a Block Display to a View

Goal

Add a block display to the Recipes view to display the most recent recipes in a sidebar, and change its configuration without changing the existing Recipes page view.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 9.1, "Concept: Uses of Views"](#)
- [#### 9.2, "Concept: The Parts of a View"](#)
- [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

Site prerequisites

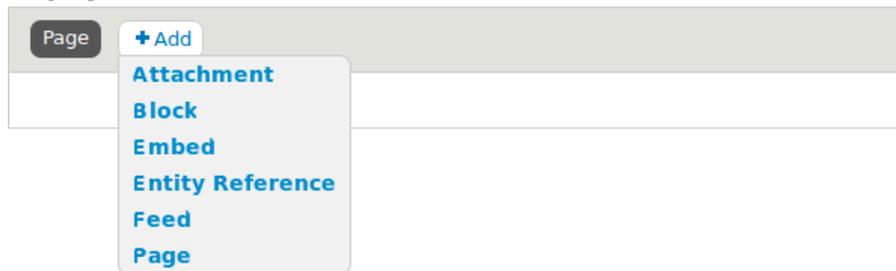
- The Recipe content type must exist, it must have a Main image field, and your site must have a couple of Recipe content items. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.3, "Adding Basic Fields to a Content Type"](#), [#### 6.9, "Changing Content Entry Forms"](#), and [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).
- The *Thumbnail (100x100)* image style must be defined. This is created on your site when you install the core Image module (installed with the core Standard installation profile) but can be recreated if deleted. See [#### 6.13, "Setting Up an Image Style"](#).
- The Recipes view must exist. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#) and [#### 9.4, "Duplicating a View"](#).

Steps

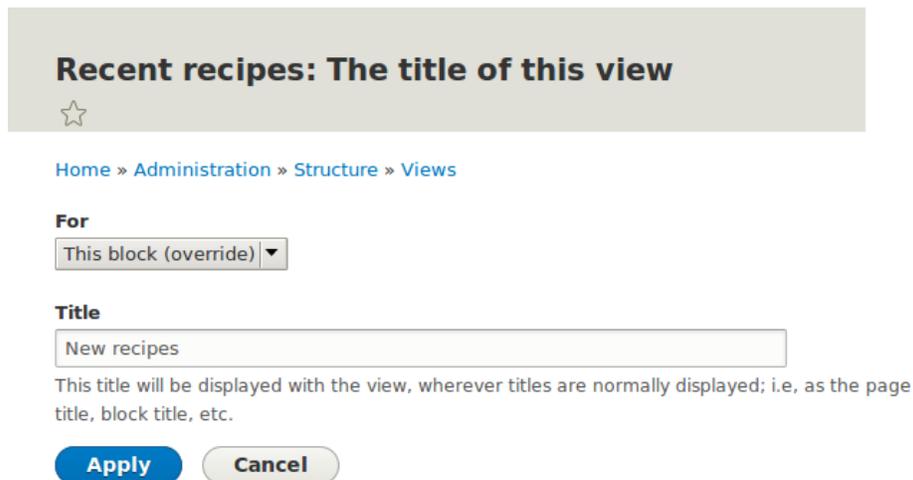
1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views (admin/structure/views)*. Find the view "Recipes" and click *Edit* from its dropdown button. Alternatively, navigate to the Recipes page in the main site navigation, and click the *Edit view* contextual link in the main area of the page. See [#### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#) for information about contextual links.

2. Create a new block display by clicking *Add* in the *Displays* section. Click *Block* from the dropdown button. The new display is created, and the focus is automatically switched to its configuration.

Displays



3. Change the title of this display by clicking *Block* next to *Display name*. The *Block: The name and the description of this display* pop-up appears. Change the *Administrative name* to "Recent recipes". Click *Apply*.
4. Change the title of the view by clicking *Title: Recipes* in the *Title* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Change the title to "New recipes" and click *Apply (this display)*.



5. Change the view's style by clicking *Format: Grid* in the *Format* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Select *Unformatted list* and Click *Apply (this display)*. You can further configure the style options in the next pop-up that appears. Then click *Apply*.

6. Configure the image field by clicking *Content: Main image* in the *Fields* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Select *Image style Thumbnail (100x100)*. Click *Apply (this display)*.

Configure field: Content: Main image



[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Views](#)

For

This block (override) ▼

Appears in: vendor, recipe.

Create a label

Label

Place a colon after the label

Exclude from display

Enable to load this field as hidden. Often used to group fields, or to use as token in another field.

Column used for click sorting

target_id ▼

Used by Style: Table to determine the actual column to click sort the field on. The default is usually fine.

Formatter

Image ▼

Image style

Thumbnail (100×100) ▼

[Configure Image Styles](#)

Link image to

Content ▼

STYLE SETTINGS

REWRITE RESULTS

7. Remove ingredients as a filter by clicking *Content: Ingredients (exposed)* in the *Filter criteria* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Click *Remove* at the bottom.
8. Configure how you want the content to be sorted in the view by clicking *Add* in the *Sort criteria* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Check the field *Authored on* (from Content category), and then *Add and configure sort criteria*.
9. In the appearing configuration pop-up, select *Sort descending* to have the most recent recipes appear first. Click *Apply*.
10. Specify the number of items to be displayed by clicking *Use pager: Mini* in the *Pager* section. In the pop-up that appears, select *This block (override)* from the *For* select list. Under *Pager*, select *Display a specified number of items*. Click *Apply (this display)*. In the *Block: Pager options* pop-up, provide "5" as the value for *Items to display*. Click *Apply*.
11. Click *Save*. You will either see the view editing page again, or the Recipes page, depending on what you did in step ¹. You should also see a message saying that the view has been saved.

✓ The view *Recipes* has been saved.

12. Place the "Recipes: Recent Recipes" block in the *Sidebar second* region. See [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#). Navigate to the site's home page to see the block.



Home

Tools

[Add content](#)

Home

[View](#) [Edit](#) [Delete](#) [Revisions](#)

Welcome to City Market - your neighborhood farmers market!

Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September

Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown

Hours and location

Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September

Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown

New recipes


Fresh Carrots


Green Salad

Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

دوخ تی اس ندرک هن ابزدنچ 10. ل صرف

10.1. Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.5, "#####: ##### ####"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # #####"](#)

What can be translated on your site?

The base language for the software that your site runs (core software, modules, and theme) is English. However, you can create either a site that displays in a different language or a multilingual site; if you do so, all relevant text, images, and file attachments should be shown in the appropriate language for each site visitor. You need to have the core Language module installed in order to use a language other than English on the site.

There are three types of information that you can translate, each with its own method for translating:

User interface text

Built-in text present in the core software, modules, and themes. This can be translated from the base English language of the software into the language(s) of your site. Typically, rather than needing to translate this text yourself, you can download translations. You need to have the core Interface Translation module installed in order to translate this text.

Configuration text

Text whose structure and initial values are defined by the core software, modules, and theme, but that you can edit. Examples include the labels for fields in your content types, header text in views, your site name, and the content of automatic email messages that your site sends out. After creating configuration text in the default language of your site, you can translate it into other languages. You need to have the core Configuration Translation module installed in order to translate this text.

Content text and files

If your site is multilingual, you can configure the content fields on your site to be translatable. After creating content in one language, you can translate it into other languages. Fields can contain textual information or uploaded files, and for each field on

each content type, you can configure it to be translatable or non-translatable. You need to have the core Content Translation module installed in order to translate this text.

Related topics

- [#### 10.2, "Adding a Language"](#)
- [#### 10.3, "Configuring Content Translation"](#)
- [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#)
- [#### 10.5, "Translating Configuration"](#)

Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

10.2. Adding a Language

Goal

Add one or more languages to your site and define which one is used by default.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)

Steps

1. Install the four core multilingual modules (Language, Interface Translation, Content Translation, and Configuration Translation), by following the steps in [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#).
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Regional and language > Languages (admin/config/regional/language)*.
3. Click *Add language*.

4. Select *Spanish* (or your preferred language) from the *Language name* select list. Click *Add language*. After waiting for translations to finish downloading, you will be returned to the *Languages* page, with a confirmation message and the new language shown.

Languages ☆

List Detection and selection

Home » Administration » Configuration » Regional and language

✓ The language *Spanish* has been created and can now be used.

Use one of the language switcher blocks to allow site visitors to switch between languages. You can enable these blocks on the [block administration page](#).

One translation file imported. 8057 translations were added, 0 translations were updated and 0 translations were removed.

Reorder the configured languages to set their order in the language switcher block and, when editing content, in the list of selectable languages. This ordering does not impact [detection and selection](#).

The site default language can also be set. It is not recommended to change the default language on a working site. [Configure the Selected language](#) setting on the detection and selection page to change the fallback language for language selection.

Interface translations are automatically imported when a language is added, or when new modules or themes are enabled. The report [Available translation updates](#) shows the status. Interface text can be customized in the [user interface translation](#) page.

[+ Add language](#)

NAME	DEFAULT	INTERFACE TRANSLATION	OPERATIONS
✚ English	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	not applicable	Edit ▼
✚ Spanish	<input type="radio"/>	8057/8059 (99.98%)	Edit ▼

[Save configuration](#)

[Show row weights](#)

5. Follow the steps in [#### 8.3, "Placing a Block in a Region"](#) to place the *Language switcher* block in the *Sidebar second* region. This will enable site visitors to switch between languages, once the site has been translated.

Expand your understanding

- [#### 10.3, "Configuring Content Translation"](#)
- [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org page "Resource Guide: Configuring a Multilingual Site"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Leila Tite](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Boris Doesborg](#).

10.3. Configuring Content Translation

Goal

Make *Custom block*, *Custom menu link*, and *Content* entity types translatable. Select specific subtypes and set which fields of these can be translated.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)

Site prerequisites

The core Content Translation module must be installed, and your site must have at least two languages. See [#### 10.2, "Adding a Language"](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Regional and language > Content language and translation (admin/config/regional/content-language)*.
2. Under *Custom language settings*, check *Content*, *Custom block* and *Custom menu link* to make these entity types translatable.

Custom language settings

- Comment
- Contact message
- Content
- Custom block
- Custom menu link
- File
- Shortcut link
- Taxonomy term
- User

Save configuration

3. Configuration options appear for *Content*, *Custom block* and *Custom menu link*. Choose the subtypes you want to translate for each entity type. Check *Basic page* for *Content*, *Basic block* for *Custom block* and *Custom menu link* for *Custom menu link*.
4. Verify the settings for the entity types as shown below:

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Default language	The default language for the entity subtype	Site's default language (English)
Show language selector on create and edit pages	Whether or not the language selector should be shown while editing and creating content	Checked

Default language

Basic block

Site's default language (English) ▼

Explanation of the language options is found on the [languages list page](#).

Show language selector on create and edit pages

5. Choose the fields that should be translatable for *Basic page* as shown in the table below.

If a field is not translation-dependent, leave it unchecked. Enabling translation for fields that are numbers or dates has use for accountability or implementing workflows.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Title	The title of the content	Checked
Authored by	The author	Unchecked
Publishing status	Whether the content has been published or not	Checked
Authored on	Date of publishing	Unchecked
Changed	Date of last update	Unchecked
Promoted to front page	Whether the content will be included in some content views	Unchecked
Sticky at top of lists	Whether the content will be displayed first in some content views	Unchecked
URL alias	Nicer URL for the content	Checked
Body	The main content of the page	Checked

Title

Authored by

Publishing status

Authored on

Changed

Promoted to front page

Sticky at top of lists

URL alias

Body

6. Similarly, check the appropriate boxes for translatable fields belonging to *Basic block* and *Custom menu link*.
7. Click *Save configuration*.

Expand your understanding

- [#### 10.5, "Translating Configuration"](#)
- [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#)

Additional resources

- [Blog post "Multilingual Drupal 8 tidbits, part 5"](#)
- [Blog post "Multilingual Drupal 8 tidbits, part 17"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Laura Vass](#) at [Pronovix](#), [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

10.4. Translating Content

Goal

Translate the home page to Spanish.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)

Site prerequisites

- The Home content item must exist. See [#### 5.2, "Creating a Content Item"](#).

- The core Content Translation module must be installed, and your site must have at least two languages. See [#### 10.2, “Adding a Language”](#).
- The *Basic page* content type must be configured to be translatable. See [#### 10.3, “Configuring Content Translation”](#).

Steps

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Content (admin/content)*.
2. Locate the home page. You can search for it by entering "Home" in the title field.
3. Select *Translate* from the dropdown button in the row of the Home content item. The page *Translations of Home* appears.
4. Click *Add* in the row *Spanish*.

LANGUAGE	TRANSLATION	SOURCE LANGUAGE	STATUS	OPERATIONS
English (Original language)	Home	n/a	Published	Edit
Spanish	n/a	n/a	Not translated	Add

5. Note that the user interface has switched to Spanish. To switch it back to English, remove the first instance of *es* in the browser’s URL. For example, if your URL looks like *example.com/es/node/5/translations/add/en/es*, remove the *es* that comes immediately after *example.com*.
6. Fill in the fields as shown below. You will have to click and expand *URL path settings* on the right to provide the value for *URL alias*.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Title	Translated title of the page	Página principal
Body	Translated body of the page	Bienvenido al mercado de la ciudad - ¡el mercado de agricultores de tu barrio! Horario: Domingos de

Field name	Explanation	Value
		9:00 a 14:00. Desde Abril a Septiembre Lugar: parking del Banco Trust número En el centro de la ciudad
URL path settings > URL alias	Translated address of the webpage	pagina-principal

7. Click *Save and keep published (this translation)*.
8. Go to your site's home page to view the newly translated page.

Expand your understanding

- Follow the steps above to translate more content on your site.
- [#### 10.5, "Translating Configuration"](#)

Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

10.5. Translating Configuration

Goal

Translate the labels on the Recipes view page into Spanish.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 10.1, "Concept: User Interface, Configuration, and Content translation"](#)
- [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#)

Site prerequisites

- The core Configuration Translation module must be installed, and your site must have at least two languages. See [#### 10.2, "Adding a Language"](#).
- The Recipes view must exist. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#) and [#### 9.4, "Duplicating a View"](#).

Steps

The basic steps for translating any configuration on your site are:

1. Locate the page where the configuration you want to translate is created or edited in the site's primary language. For example, to translate the site name, you need to find the page where you would edit the site name (see [#### 4.2, "Editing Basic Site Information"](#)).
2. Find a link, tab, or button on the page that says "Translate" or something similar. Click this link, tab, or button.
3. Find a button that will let you add a translation in the desired language, and click this button.
4. Enter the translation in the form, and save.

Most configuration is fairly straightforward and intuitive to edit in this manner. Views configuration is an exception, because the translation editing form is nothing like the view editing form, and it is complex and hierarchical rather than being a simple form with just a few fields. As an example of how to translate a view, here are the steps to translate the labels in the Recipes view to Spanish:

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Structure > Views (admin/structure/views)*.
2. Locate the Recipes view and click *Translate* from the dropdown button.
3. Click *Add* in the row *Spanish*. The page *Add Spanish translation for Recipes view* appears.
4. Find *Displays > Master Display settings > Recipes default display Options*. Translate the *Display title* from "Recipes" to "Recetas".
5. Find *Displays > Master display settings > Recipes default display options > Exposed form > Reset options*. Translate *Submit button text (Apply)* to "Aplicar". The other buttons and labels in this section do not appear on the Recipes page or block, and do not need to be translated.

Add Spanish translation for *Recipes* view ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Structure](#) » [Views](#) » [Recipes](#) » [Translate](#)

Label Recipes	Label <input type="text" value="Recipes"/>
Administrative description (Empty)	Administrative description <input type="text"/>

▼ **DISPLAYS**

▼ **MASTER DISPLAY SETTINGS**

Title Master	Title <input type="text" value="Master"/>
------------------------	---

▼ **RECIPES DEFAULT DISPLAY OPTIONS**

▼ **EXPOSED FORM**

▼ **RESET OPTIONS**

Submit button text Apply	Submit button text <input type="text" value="Apply"/>
Reset button label Reset	Reset button label <input type="text" value="Reset"/>
Exposed sorts label Sort by	Exposed sorts label <input type="text" value="Sort by"/>

6. Find *Displays* > *Master display settings* > *Recipes default display options* > *Filters* > *(Empty)* *taxonomy term ID* > *Find recipes using... Expose*. In the *Label* field, enter "Encontrar recetas usando...".
7. Click *Save translation*.
8. Navigate to the *Recipes* page and switch to Spanish using the *Language switcher* block. Verify that the labels have been translated.

Expand your understanding

- Translate the block display title in the *Recent recipes display settings* section of the *Recipes* view.
- Translate the page title in the *Vendors* view.
- Translate other configuration. Some examples of where to find the translation pages:
 - To translate the site name, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Configuration* > *System* > *Basic site settings* > *Translate system information (admin/config/system/site-information/translate)*.

- To translate the contact form, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Contact forms (admin/structure/contact)*. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button in the *Website feedback* row.
- To translate the name of a menu, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Menus (admin/structure/menu)*. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button for the menu whose name you want to translate.
- Menu items within a menu are considered to be content (not configuration); see [#### 10.3, "Configuring Content Translation"](#) to enable translation. Once translation is enabled, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Menus (admin/structure/menu)*. Click *Edit menu* in the dropdown button for the menu whose links you want to translate. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button for the link you want to translate.
- To translate field labels on a content type, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Content types (admin/structure/types)*. Click *Manage fields* in the dropdown button for the content type whose field labels you want to edit. Click *Translate* in the dropdown button for the field whose label you want to edit.
- Translate content. See [#### 10.4, "Translating Content"](#).

Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

تیاس یزاسای شرافس و هعسوت 11. ل صرف دوخ

11.1. Finding Modules

Goal

Find and evaluate modules on *Drupal.org*.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)

Steps

1. Go to [Drupal.org](https://www.drupal.org/), and navigate to *Download & Extend > Modules* (https://www.drupal.org/project/project_module).
2. Filter your search using the categories on the module search page. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Maintenance status	How actively should the module be maintained?	Actively maintained
Development status	What kind of development should the module undergo?	Any
Module categories	The module's topic area.	Administration
Core compatibility	The version of the core software the module is compatible with.	8.x
Status	Project status: <i>Sandbox projects</i> are experimental	Full projects

Field name	Explanation	Example value
	projects. <i>Full projects</i> have already gone through an approval process, but they can still be in development.	
Search Modules	Search for <i>Admin Toolbar</i> , a module that will be covered in detail later. Alternatively, you can also leave the field blank if you are not sure which module to search for.	Admin Toolbar
Sort by	Order your search results by criteria like <i>Most installed</i> (popular modules that many sites use) or <i>Last release</i> (date of latest version released).	Most installed

46 Modules match your search

Maintenance status

Development status

Module categories

Core compatibility

Status

Stability

Search Modules

Sort by

3. Click *Search*. Search results will appear.

Admin Toolbar

Posted by [eme](#) on 20 April 2015

What is Admin Toolbar module ?

Admin Toolbar intends to improve the default Drupal Toolbar (the administration menu at the top of your site) to transform it into a drop-down menu, providing a fast access to all administration pages.

The module works on the top of the default toolbar core module and is therefore a very light module and keeps all the toolbar functionalities (shortcut / media responsive).

How to use Admin Toolbar module ?

Just install it like any other module.

[Read more](#) · Categories: [Actively maintained](#) , [Under active development](#) , [Administration](#)

Adminimal Admin Toolbar (Drupal 8)

Posted by [energee](#) on 19 March 2016

This module is inspired by [Adminimal Administration Menu](#). It provides a minimalist style to [Admin Toolbar](#) for Drupal 8.

Although the "Adminimal" theme provides menu styling, there are some conflicts with Admin toolbar and styling will only be present when the admin theme is set like when editing content.

[Read more](#) · Categories: [Actively maintained](#) , [Under active development](#) , [Administration](#) , [Theme Enhancements](#)

Toolbar Themes

Posted by [Jeff Burnz](#) on 13 September 2016

Provides themes for the Drupal 8 Toolbar module. The main purpose of this module is to provide compact, minimal themes for the Toolbar and allow the site admin to show or hide tabs and icons.

Installation

Install like all other modules, then go to: `~/admin/config/toolbar-themes/settings`

[Read more](#) · Categories: [Actively maintained](#) , [Under active development](#) , [Administration](#)

4. To further evaluate a module, click its title in the list of search results to visit its project page.

Some aspects to pay attention to when evaluating modules:

- Project description: The description of the module on its project page should be clear and useful. You should get an idea of its features and requirements.
- Maintenance status: If a module is *Actively maintained*, you can be sure that there will be security updates, bug fixes and feature improvements provided on a regular basis. However, if the module is unmaintained or abandoned, you shouldn't use it.

- Development status: *Under active development* means you can expect new features to be added to the project, but some aspects (for example, API) may still change. *Maintenance fixes only* means that the project is considered feature complete.
- Reported installs, downloads: You can see how many people have downloaded and how many sites use the module. If it's only used by a few sites, it might be a unique solution that not many people need, or it might be a warning sign that you shouldn't use it either.
- Maintainers: When was the last commit (the last time someone updated something on the module) or last release (new version)? If the project has few open issues, a long time since commits/releases might be appropriate, but if it has a lot of open issues and there are no commits/releases, that would be a clue that it might be abandoned.
- Issues: See if there are any open issues, potential problems with the module. Check the *Statistics* to see how regularly issues are responded to.
- Resources: Check if the module has documentation or a README file, that can help you install, configure, explore, and test it.

Admin Toolbar

[View](#) [Version control](#) [Automated Testing](#)

Posted by [eme](#) on April 20, 2015 at 2:28pm

Admin Toolbar

What is Admin Toolbar module ?

Admin Toolbar intends to improve the default Drupal Toolbar (the administration menu at the top of your site) to transform it into a drop-down menu, providing a fast access to all administration pages.

The module works on the top of the default toolbar core module and is therefore a very light module and keeps all the toolbar functionalities (shortcut / media responsive).

How to use Admin Toolbar module ?

Just install it like any other module.

What more?

The module provides also a submodule called "Admin Toolbar Extra Tools" adding extra links like what does Admin Menu module for Drupal 7 (flush caches, run CRON, etc...).

Please provide feedback and ideas!

Complementary modules :

[Toolbar Menu](#) allows you to add easily any menu to your toolbar and plays nicely with Admin toolbar making them dropdown menus.

[Toolbar Anti-flicker](#) removes the impact of the admin toolbar sub-menu on the rest of the page.

[Coffee](#) is a good module to look for admin paths.

[Adminimal Admin toolbar](#) provides a black theming, recommended for the [Adminimal theme](#).

Supporting organizations:

[emerya](#)

Project Information

Maintenance status: [Actively maintained](#)

Development status: [Under active development](#)

Module categories: [Administration](#)

Reported installs: **14,813** sites currently report using this module. [View usage statistics](#).

Downloads: 81,993

Automated tests: Enabled

Last modified: August 9, 2016

shield [Stable releases receive coverage](#) from the [Drupal Security Team](#).

Look for the shield icon below.

Maintainers for Admin Toolbar

[romainj](#) - 29 commits

last: 5 days ago, first: 4 months ago

[eme](#) - 11 commits

last: 3 weeks ago, first: 8 months ago

[matio89](#) - 23 commits

last: 2 months ago, first: 1 year ago

[View all committers](#)

[View commits](#)

Issues for Admin Toolbar

To avoid duplicates, please search before submitting a new issue.

[Search](#)

[Advanced search](#)

All issues

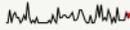
15 open, 138 total

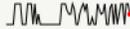
Bug report

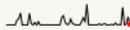
6 open, 78 total

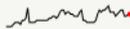
[Subscribe via e-mail](#)

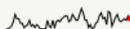
Statistics

New issues  3

Response rate  50 %

1st response  6 hours

Open bugs  6

Participants  7

2 year graph, updates weekly

Resources

[Read license](#)

Expand your understanding

[#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#)

Attributions

Written by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#).

11.2. Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode

Goal

Put your site in maintenance mode to allow users with the right permissions to use the site while users without this permission are presented with a message that the site is under maintenance.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)

Steps

Enabling maintenance mode

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Maintenance mode (admin/config/development/maintenance)*. The *Maintenance mode* page appears.
2. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Put site into maintenance mode	Enable the maintenance mode	Checked
Message to display when in maintenance mode	The information that is shown to website visitors when the mode is enabled. Variables such as @site can be used in the message	@site is currently under maintenance but should be back shortly. Thank you for your patience.

3. Click *Save configuration*.
4. Verify that the site is in maintenance mode by accessing it from another browser where you aren't logged in. If you are not able to verify, try clearing the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

Anytown Farmers Market
Farm Fresh Food

Site under maintenance

Anytown Farmers Market is currently under maintenance. We should be back shortly. Thank you for your patience.

Disabling maintenance mode

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Maintenance mode (admin/config/development/maintenance)*. The *Maintenance mode* page appears.
2. Fill in the fields as shown below.

Field name	Explanation	Value
Put site into maintenance mode	Disable the maintenance mode	Unchecked
Message to display when in maintenance mode	No message required while disabling. You can leave the field blank.	

3. Click *Save configuration*.
4. Verify that the site is no longer in maintenance mode by accessing it from another browser where you aren't logged in. If you are not able to verify, try clearing the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).



Home

Welcome to City Market - your neighborhood farmers market!

Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September

Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown

Hours and location

Open: Sundays, 9 AM to 2 PM, April to September

Location: Parking lot of Trust Bank, 1st & Union, downtown

Language

English
Español

New recipes



Fresh Carrots



Green Salad

Expand your understanding

- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

11.3. Downloading and Installing a Module from *Drupal.org*

Goal

Download and install the [contributed Admin Toolbar module](#), which allows you to easily browse through the administration section of the website.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#)

Site prerequisites

- If you want to install modules via the website, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on installing modules.
- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#) [#####](#).

Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to install a contributed module. If you are installing a custom module rather than a contributed module, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to download and unpack the module files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, "Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files"](#). If you are installing a contributed module with external dependencies that are managed by Composer, follow the steps for downloading in [#### 11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"](#). In either of these cases, then continue here with step ⁷ in the instructions for the administrative interface below.

Using the administrative interface

1. On the *Admin toolbar* project page on drupal.org (https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar), scroll to the *Downloads* section at the bottom of the page.
2. Copy the address of the *tar.gz* link. Depending on your device and browser, you might do this by right clicking and selecting *Copy link address*.

Downloads

Recommended releases

Version	Download	Date
8.x-1.16	tar.gz (55.55 KB) zip (62.65 KB)	2016-Jul-28

Development releases

Version	Download	Date
8.x-1.x-dev	tar.gz (16.89 KB) zip (26.26 KB)	2016-Aug-19

[View all releases](#)

3. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Extend* (*admin/modules*). The *Extend* page appears.
4. Click *Install new module*. The *Install new module* page appears.

Install new module ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Extend](#)

You can find [modules](#) and [themes](#) on [drupal.org](#). The following file extensions are supported: *zip tar tgz gz bz2*.

Install from a URL

For example: <http://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/name.tar.gz>

Or

Upload a module or theme archive to install

Browse... No file selected.

For example: *name.tar.gz* from your local computer

[Install](#)

5. In the field *Install from a URL*, paste the copied download link. This value could look like this: https://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/admin_toolbar-8.x-1.14.tar.gz

6. Click *Install* to upload and unpack the new module on the server. The files are being downloaded to the *modules* directory.
7. Click *Enable newly added modules* to return to the *Extend* page. If you used the manual uploading procedure, start with this step, and reach the *Extend* page by using the *Manage* administrative menu and navigating to *Extend (admin/modules)*.
8. Locate and check *Admin toolbar*.
9. Click *Install* to turn on the new module.

Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the module you want to install, which is the last segment of the module's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar, the project name is "admin_toolbar".
2. Run the following Drush commands, giving the project name (for example, `admin_toolbar`) as a parameter:

```
drush dl admin_toolbar  
drush en admin_toolbar
```
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Expand your understanding

- Verify that the [contributed Admin Toolbar module](#) is working by browsing through the menu in the administration section.
- Install and configure the [contributed Pathauto module](#) so that content pages in your site get nice URLs by default. See [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#) for more on URLs.
- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Contributed modules"](#)

- ["Download and Extend" page on Drupal.org](#)
- [Admin Toolbar module on Drupal.org](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

11.4. Finding Themes

Goal

Find and evaluate themes on *Drupal.org*.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)

Steps

1. Go to <https://www.drupal.org>, and navigate to *Download & Extend > Themes* (https://www.drupal.org/project/project_theme).
2. Filter your search using the categories on the theme search page. For example, you might use these filters:

Field name	Explanation	Example value
Maintenance status	How actively is the theme maintained? If a theme is actively maintained, you can expect bug fixes and improvements on a regular basis.	Actively maintained
Development status	What kind of development is the theme undergoing? If you select <i>Under active development</i> , you can expect	Any

Field name	Explanation	Example value
	new features to be added, and some aspects may still change. If you select <i>Maintenance fixes only</i> , it means that the theme is considered complete.	
Core compatibility	The Drupal version the theme is compatible with.	8.x
Status	<i>Sandbox projects</i> are experimental projects. <i>Full projects</i> have already gone through an approval process, but they can still be in development.	Full projects
Search Themes	Search by search term in the theme's description.	-
Sort by	Order your search results by criteria like <i>Most installed</i> (popular themes that many sites use) or <i>Last release</i> (date of latest version released).	Most installed

179 Themes match your search

Maintenance status

Development status

Core compatibility

Status

Stability

Search Themes

Sort by

3. Click *Search*. Search results will appear.

Bootstrap

Posted by [wundo](#) on 18 May 2008

“ Sleek, intuitive, and powerful mobile first front-end framework for faster and easier web development. Bootstrap has become one of the most popular front-end frameworks and open source projects in the world.

This base theme bridges the gap between Drupal and the [Bootstrap Framework](#).

Features

- [jsDelivr CDN](#) for "out-of-the-box" styling and faster page load times.
- [Bootswatch](#) theme support, if using the CDN.
- Glyphicons support via [Icon API](#).
- Extensive integration and template/preprocessor overrides for most of the [Bootstrap Framework](#) CSS, Components and JavaScript
- Theme settings to further enhance the Drupal Bootstrap integration:
 - [Breadcrumbs](#)
 - [Navbar](#)
 - [Popovers](#)
 - [Tooltips](#)
 - [Wells](#) (per region)

Documentation

Visit the project's [official documentation site](#) or the markdown files inside the `./docs` directory.

Supported modules

Drupal 8

- [Bootstrap Layouts](#)

Drupal 7

- [Bootstrap Core](#)
- [jQuery Update](#)
- [Icon API](#)
- [Picture](#)
- [Views](#) (partial support)
- [Webform](#) (partial support)

5 Year Evolution (gource)

<https://youtu.be/Cvq6MPJp2dl>

4. To further evaluate a theme, click its title in the list of search results to visit its project page.

Some aspects to pay attention to while evaluating themes:

- Introduction: The description of the theme on its project page should be clear and useful. A screenshot of the theme helps your evaluation as well.
- Downloads: The theme should be available for your version of the core software. Pay attention to the color-coding: Themes marked green are recommended to be used on

live sites, the ones marked yellow should be carefully evaluated before use, and the ones marked red are only recommended for testing.

- Project Information: Check the theme’s maintenance and development status, and how frequently it’s downloaded and installed.
- Issues: See if there are any open issues or potential problems with the theme.
- Resources: Check if the theme has documentation.

Expand your understanding

- [#### 11.5, “Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org”](#)

Attributions

Written by [Diána Lakatos](#).

11.5. Downloading and Installing a Theme from *Drupal.org*

Goal

Download and install a theme from *Drupal.org*.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 11.4, “Finding Themes”](#)
- [#### 3.2, “#####: #####”](#)

Site prerequisites

If you want to install via the website, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See [#### 4.3, “Installing a Module”](#) for instructions on installing modules.

If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, “#####: #####”](#).

Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to install a contributed theme. If you are installing a custom theme rather than a contributed theme, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to download and unpack the theme files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, “Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files”](#). If you are installing a contributed theme with external dependencies that are managed by Composer, follow the steps for downloading in [#### 11.9, “Using Composer and Git to Download Files”](#). In either of these cases, then continue here with step ⁷ in the instructions for the administrative interface below.

Using the administrative interface

1. On the theme’s project page on drupal.org (for example, <https://www.drupal.org/project/mayo>), scroll to the *Downloads* section at the bottom of the page.
2. Right-click *tar.gz* to copy the address.

Downloads

Version	Download	Date
8.x-1.3	tar.gz (437.31 KB) zip (486.26 KB)	2016-May-09
7.x-2.6	tar.gz (411.91 KB) zip (441.6 KB)	2015-Nov-11
7.x-1.4	tar.gz (386.35 KB) zip (403.15 KB)	2015-Nov-11

Development releases

8.x-1.x-dev	tar.gz (437.31 KB) zip (486.27 KB)	2016-Apr-27
7.x-2.x-dev	tar.gz (411.92 KB) zip (441.62 KB)	2016-Feb-11

[View all releases](#)

3. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Appearance (admin/appearance)*. The *Appearance* page appears.
4. Click *Install new theme*. The *Install new theme* page appears.

Install new theme ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#)

You can find [modules](#) and [themes](#) on [drupal.org](#). The following file extensions are supported: *zip tar tgz gz bz2*.

Install from a URL

For example: `http://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/name.tar.gz`

Or

Upload a module or theme archive to install

 No file selected.

For example: `name.tar.gz` from your local computer

Install

5. In the field *Install from a URL*, paste the copied download link. This value could look like `https://ftp.drupal.org/files/projects/mayo-8.x-1.3.tar.gz`.
6. Click *Install* to upload and unpack the new theme on the server. The files are being downloaded to the *themes* directory.
7. Click *Install newly added themes* to return to the *Appearance* page. If you used the manual uploading procedure, start with this step, and reach the *Appearance* page by using the *Manage* administrative menu and navigating to *Appearance (admin/appearance)*.
8. Locate the new theme under *Uninstalled themes* and click *Install and set as default* to use it. All non-administrative pages on the site will now use this new theme.



Mayo 8.x-1.3

Simple but fully customizable and colorable responsive layout theme.

[Install](#) | [Install and set as default](#)

Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the theme you want to install, which is the last segment of the theme's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is <https://www.drupal.org/project/mayo>, the project name is `mayo`.
2. Run the following Drush commands, giving the project name (for example, `mayo`) as a parameter:

```
drush dl mayo
drush en mayo
drush config-set system.theme default mayo
```
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Expand your understanding

- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Appearance* (`admin/appearance`) and uninstall any themes that you are not using.
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#)

- If you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).

Attributions

Written and edited by [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#), and [Boris Doesborgh](#).

11.6. Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files

Goal

Manually download module or theme files and upload them to your site, if the website or Drush methods for installing or updating a module or theme do not work, or if you are placing a custom-written module or theme.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.1, "Finding Modules"](#)
- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.4, "Finding Themes"](#)

Site prerequisites

You need to be facing any of the following to perform the manual download described in this topic:

- File permission issues
- FTP permission issues
- You created a custom module/theme or received its files from someone
- You could not successfully complete the instructions in [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#), or [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)

Skip this topic if none of the above applies to you.

Steps

If you are installing a module or theme from *Drupal.org*, follow the downloading instructions, and then the uploading/unpacking instructions. If you created the module or theme, skip the downloading step. Instead, create an archive file (that you know how to extract on the server) and proceed with the steps in uploading/unpacking, using whatever method is appropriate for the way you initially created the archive file.

Downloading the files

1. Open the module or theme project page on drupal.org; for example, the *Admin toolbar* page (https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar).
2. Scroll to the *Downloads* section near the bottom of the page.

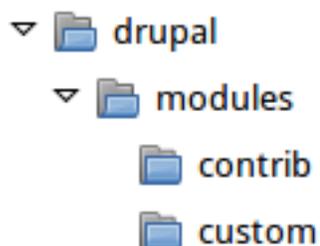
Downloads

Version	Download	Date
8.x-1.19	tar.gz (17.07 KB) zip (27.02 KB)	2017-Apr-06
Development releases		
8.x-1.x-dev	tar.gz (19.49 KB) zip (29.81 KB)	2017-Jun-11
View all releases		

3. Click *tar.gz* to download the file to your computer.

Uploading the files to your site and unpacking them

1. If you are adding a new module or theme, create subdirectories in your top-level *modules* and *themes* directories (if they don't already exist). Typically, people make a *contrib* subdirectory for contributed modules and themes that are downloaded from *Drupal.org*, and a *custom* subdirectory for modules and themes that they created. Your *modules* directory might look like this:



2. If you are replacing an existing module or theme with an updated version, put the site into maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
3. If you are replacing an existing module or theme with an updated version, find and delete all the existing files and directories for the existing module or theme. Modules are normally located in directories under the top-level *modules* directory, and themes are normally located in directories under the top-level *themes* directory.
4. Upload the *.tar.gz* file (or whatever archive you created) to your site. Place it in either the same location from which you deleted the directory (if replacing an existing module or theme) or the appropriate subdirectory of *modules* or *themes* (if adding a new module or theme).
5. Extract the files from the *.tar.gz* archive (or whatever archive you created), making a subdirectory in the same location as the archive file. If you do not have terminal access, or your hosting server is not running Linux, your hosting control panel's file manager should provide a way to extract the files. If you have terminal access to your hosting server (running Linux) and you are using a *tar.gz* file, you can use a command like:

```
tar -xzf admin_toolbar-8.x-1.17.tar.gz
```
6. Delete the compressed file from the server, unless your unpacking method already deleted it.
7. Refer to [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#), [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#), or [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#) to complete the installation or update of the module or theme. Start at the step after the automatic download has been completed.

Expand your understanding

- If you work with multiple environments (for example, a local development site and a production site) you will have to repeat the steps on each environment, or re-clone the environment. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).
- If you added a new theme, navigate in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Appearance* (*admin/appearance*) and uninstall the old theme.

Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Updating modules"](#)

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Installing contributed modules \(Drupal 8\)"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Installing themes"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#), [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Marc Isaacson](#).

11.7. Concept: Development Sites

What are Development Sites?

Development Sites are different copies of the same site used for developing, updating, and testing a site without risking the integrity of the live site.

An example deployment workflow for site building will usually include the sites mentioned below:

Local environment

The development process starts with developers working on new features, bug fixes, theming, and configuration in their local environment.

Development site

Developers push the changes they've been working on to the development site. For a team of more than one developer, version control is usually used. Git is a version control system that tracks your files for any changes. You can then commit those changes to a repository. Using Git allows team members to work on the same site without overriding each other's work. It also makes it possible to easily roll back to previous stages of the development.

Staging site

The staging site can be used for testing, or presenting the changes to the client for approval. QA (Quality Assurance) and UAT (User Acceptance Testing) are most often carried out on the staging site. It is recommended to have live content on both the development and staging sites, so that you can test how the new features will work with the existing content.

Production site

The live site on the web available to visitors. It contains new features that have been proven safe to go live.

Based on the project's size, scope, requirements, or stakeholders, stages from the above workflow can be removed, or additional stages can be added. For example, a testing site before staging can be added to separate testing and user acceptance processes.

Related topics

- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)
- [#### 2.6, "#####: #####"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Introduction to Git"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Diána Lakatos](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

11.8. Making a Development Site

Goal

Make a copy of a site that you can use to develop new features and test updates on.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)

Site prerequisites

- You have a live, developed site that you would like to make a copy of for development purposes.
- If you want to use Drush for some of the steps in this task, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

Steps

1. Follow the steps in [#### 3.3, "#####"](#), so that you have hosting set up for your development site, you know where the web root is for your development site, and you have an empty database and database user for your development site to use.
2. Make a database dump file from your live site's database. Try one of the following methods:

- If you are using MySQL as your database, and your live site's server has phpMyAdmin installed (it is available from many hosting control panels), use the *Export* tab in phpMyAdmin to export in *SQL* format. Using *gzip* compression on the output file is suggested, to reduce the file size.
- If you are using MySQL and have access to the command line, use this command (substituting in your site's database name, user name, and password):

```
mysqldump -u USERNAME -p'PASSWORD' DATABASENAME > BACKUPFILE.sql
```

- If you prefer to use Drush, use this command:

```
drush sql-dump > BACKUPFILE.sql
```

- Use the [contributed Backup and Migrate module](#) from within your live site. See [#### 11.3, "Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org"](#) for instructions on installing contributed modules.

You now have a database dump stored in the file *BACKUPFILE.sql*. For security reasons, avoid storing this file on your hosting server anywhere under the Drupal site root. This will prevent others from getting a copy of your database.

3. Copy all of the files from the web root of your live site to the web root of your development site.

4. Edit the *sites/default/settings.php* file under your development site's top-level directory in a plain-text editor. Find the lines near the end that contain the database name, database username, and database password, and update them to the information about the development site database you set up. The lines look something like this (before editing):

```
$databases['default']['default'] = array (  
  'database' => 'live_site_database_name',  
  'username' => 'live_site_database_username',  
  'password' => 'live_site_database_password',
```

5. Check whether your *settings.php* file has the following setting; if yes, then you will need to edit this to point to your development site URL instead of your production site URL:

```
$settings['trusted_host_patterns']
```

6. Import the database dump file you created, into the development site's database. Try one of the following methods:

- If you are using MySQL as your database, and your live site's server has PHPMyAdmin installed (it is available from many hosting control panels), use the *Import* tab in PHPMyAdmin. You may find that you have to restart the import a few times, if your database was large.

- If you are using MySQL and have access to the command line, use this command (substituting in your site's database name, user name, and password; if you made a gzip-compressed backup file, you will also need to uncompress it first):

```
mysql -u USERNAME -pPASSWORD DATABASE_NAME < BACKUPFILE.sql
```

- If you prefer to use Drush, use this command:

```
drush sql-query --file=BACKUPFILE.sql
```

7. If your development and live sites need to have different configuration, then you have to use configuration overrides in the *settings.php* file. The *\$config* variable will help you

maintain override values separately from the standard configuration data. For instance, you might want the site name to be "Anytown Farmers Market" on the production site, but "Development Site for Anytown Farmers Market" on the development site. To do that, you could have the production value in the site configuration (in the database), and on the development site, in the *settings.php* file, you would need to have:

```
$config['system.site']['name'] = "Development Site for Anytown Farmers Market";
```

Expand your understanding

- Verify that the development site is working correctly.
- Log in to the development site as an administrator, and clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).
- [#### 11.10, "Deploying New Site Features"](#)

Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Backing up a site"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Create a Test Site"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

11.9. Using Composer and Git to Download Files

Goal

Use Composer and/or Git to download files and dependencies in the core software, or in add-on modules and themes.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)

Site prerequisites

If you want to use Git or Composer, they must be installed either on a local development server or your live site. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

Steps

If you are unable to install the Git or Composer tools on your live server, after following the steps in any of the sections below on your local server, you will need to transfer any updated or added files to your live server. The recommended procedure is to make an archive or zip file of the new and changed files, transfer the archive to your live server, and extract it there. If you are using Composer, make sure to check for updates and additions to the following files, in the root of your installation:

- *vendor* directory
- *autoload.php*
- *composer.json*
- *composer.lock*

Using Git to download a project

Follow these steps if you want to download the development version of the core software, or of a contributed module or theme, from the project's Git version control repository:

1. In a command-line window, change to one level above the directory where you want the files to reside. For the core software, this would be your web root. For an add-on module,

this would be the *modules* directory, or a sub-directory like *contrib* under the modules directory.

2. Locate the page for the project that you want to download on *Drupal.org*; for example, <https://www.drupal.org/project/drupal> for the core software, or https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar for the contributed Admin Toolbar module.
3. Click the *Version control* link near the top of the page, which opens up a page giving Git commands for this project.
4. Copy the `git clone` command under *Setting up repository for the first time*, and paste it into your command line. For example, it might be:

```
git clone --branch 8.2.x https://git.drupal.org/project/drupal.git
```
5. This will create a directory named with the short name of the project (*drupal* in this example), and download the required files into that directory. If necessary, rename the directory.
6. If you downloaded the *drupal* project (the core software), follow the instructions below to download its external dependencies.
7. Later on, you can change to the created directory and run the command `git pull` to update the files to the latest version from the Git repository for the project.

Using Composer to download external core dependencies

Follow these steps if you downloaded the core software files using Git, which does not include the external dependencies:

1. Change to the core software's root directory.
2. Run the command `composer install` at the command line. The external dependencies will be downloaded.

Using Composer to download the core software

Follow these steps if you have not yet downloaded or installed the core software, and you want to use Composer to download both the core software and its external dependencies:

1. At the command line, change to one level above the directory where you want the software to reside.
2. Enter this command, where `my_site_name` is the directory you want to create:

```
composer create-project drupal/drupal my_site_name
```

Using Composer to download a module or theme

Follow these steps if you have already downloaded the core software, and you want to use Composer to add a contributed module or theme (usually because it has external dependencies that need to be downloaded with Composer):

1. If you have not already done so, tell Composer about the download location for contributed modules and themes, by entering this command from the root of your site installation:

```
composer config repositories.drupal composer https://packages.drupal.org/8
```

2. If you have not already done so, you can optionally override the default location where Composer will put downloaded modules and themes. For example, typically you would want contributed modules to go in a *contrib* subdirectory of the top-level

modules directory, instead of the default location of *modules*. To make this change, edit the *composer.json* file at the root level in your site installation. Find the line that says

"extra": {, and add these lines following that line:

```
"installer-paths": {
  "modules/contrib/{$name}": ["type:drupal-module"],
  "modules/custom/{$name}": ["type:drupal-custom-module"],
  "profiles/contrib/{$name}": ["type:drupal-profile"],
  "themes/contrib/{$name}": ["type:drupal-theme"],
  "themes/custom/{$name}": ["type:drupal-custom-theme"],
  "libraries/{$name}": ["type:drupal-library"],
  "drush/{$name}": ["type:drupal-drush"]
},
```

3. Each time you want to add a contributed module or theme, determine the project's short name. This is the last part of the URL of the project page; for example, the Geofield module, at <https://www.drupal.org/project/geofield>, has short name `geofield`.

4. To download the contributed module or theme, along with its external dependencies, enter the following command at the root of your site (substituting the short name of the module or theme for `geofield`):

```
composer require drupal/geofield
```

Using Composer to update a project's files

Follow these steps to update the files for the core software or a contributed module or theme, after having already started to manage dependencies with Composer:

1. Determine the short name of the project you want to update. For the core software, it is *drupal*. For contributed modules and themes, it is the last part of the URL of the project

page; for example, the Geofield module, at <https://www.drupal.org/project/geofield>, has

short name `geofield`.

2. Determine how to enter the version number you want to update to. For example, for version 8.x-1.7 of a contributed module, you would enter just the `1.7`, and for the core software version `8.3.1`, you would enter `8.3.1`.
3. Enter the following command at the root of your site (substituting the short name of the module or theme for `geofield` and the correct version number):

```
composer require drupal/geofield:1.7
```

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Using Composer with Drupal"](#)

Attributions

Adapted by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) from ["Using Composer with Drupal"](#), copyright 2000-2017 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

11.10. Deploying New Site Features

Goal

Copy a view that you have created in a local development site to the production site.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)
- [#### 11.11, "Synchronizing Configuration Versions"](#)
- [#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)

Site prerequisites

- The core Configuration Manager module must be installed in both the development and production sites. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on installing core modules.

- The Vendor content type must exist in both the development and production sites, with the same fields. See [#### 6.1, "Adding a Content Type"](#).
- The Vendors view must exist in the development site but not the production site. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#).

Steps

1. Open the local development site.
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Configuration synchronization > Export > Single item (admin/config/development/configuration/single/export)*. The *Single export* page appears.
3. Select *View* from the *Configuration type* list.
4. Select *Vendors* from the *Configuration name* list. The configuration appears in the textarea.
5. Copy the configuration from the textarea.

6. Open the production site.
7. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Configuration synchronizationImport > Single item* (*admin/config/development/configuration*). The *Import* page appears.
8. Select *View* from the *Configuration type* list.
9. Paste the configuration in the textarea.
10. Click *Import*. The confirmation page appears.
11. Click *Confirm*.

12. Verify that the view was imported by navigating in the *Manage* administrative menu to *Structure > Views*.

Expand your understanding

The steps in this topic show how to export and import a single configuration item. However, often if you develop functionality on a development website and want to transfer it to your production site, you will need to transfer multiple configuration items. For instance, if you developed a new content type with fields, you would need to transfer several configuration items for each field, one for the content type itself, and possibly multiple view mode and form mode items, and they would have to be transferred in the right order. Getting this right can be both tedious and difficult.

As an alternative, you can export and import the complete configuration of the site. For this, you would need a local development site that is a clone of the production site (see [#### 11.8, “Making a Development Site”](#)), and then you can follow the steps in [#### 11.11, “Synchronizing Configuration Versions”](#) to synchronize configuration between development and production sites.

Another alternative is to use the [contributed Features module](#), which allows exporting and importing bundled functionality (for example, all the configuration for a photo gallery).

Finally, if you do not see the effect of these changes in your site, you might need to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, “Clearing the Cache”](#).

Related concepts

- [#### 11.7, “Concept: Development Sites”](#)
- [#### 2.6, “#####: #####”](#)

Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

11.11. Synchronizing Configuration Versions

Goal

Synchronize the configuration between a development and live site.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.5, "#####: ##### ####"](#)
- [#### 3.3, "##### ##### ####"](#)
- [#### 11.7, "Concept: Development Sites"](#)
- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)

Site prerequisites

- You must have a development copy of your production site. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).
- The core Configuration Manager module must be installed on both the development and production sites. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on how to install core modules.
- You must have changed configuration on either the production or development site (the *source site*), and want to synchronize the changes to the other site (the *destination site*). As an example, you can develop a new content type, fields, and views on your development site, and when it is all working correctly, deploy the changes to the live site.
- All configuration that should not be synchronized between the source and destination sites must be stored in configuration overrides in the *settings.php* file rather than in the database. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).

Steps

1. In the source site, in the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Configuration synchronization > Export* (*admin/config/development/configuration/full/export*).
2. Click *Export*. Your site will generate an archive of the full site configuration. Save the file on your local computer.

3. In the destination site, in the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration* > *Development* > *Configuration synchronization* > *Import* (*admin/config/development/configuration/full/import*).
4. Browse to find the downloaded configuration archive, and click *Upload*. Your configuration archive will be uploaded to the destination site, and you will be redirected to the configuration *Synchronize* page (*admin/config/development/configuration*) with a message saying your files were uploaded.
5. Verify that the differences shown on the page are what you expect. You may see configuration items that have been added, deleted, or changed; for changed items, you can click *View differences* to see what the changes are.
6. When you are satisfied, click *Import all* to import the configuration changes.

Expand your understanding

- If the changes you have made involve only one configuration item (such as one view), you can use the single configuration export/import feature to deploy the change between sites. See [#### 11.10, “Deploying New Site Features”](#).
- After the step where you export the full configuration from the source site, you might also want to unpack the archive and commit it to a version control system, such as Git, to track changes in your site configuration. See [#### 3.2, “#####: #####”](#).

Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

تال کشم لح و یری گشی پ 12. ل صرف

12.1. Concept: Cache

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)

What is the page cache?

The software that runs your site, on each page request, must perform calculations and retrieve data from the database, in order to compose the page that is sent to the web browser or other application that is accessing the site. These calculations take time, which can mean that your page load time is longer than would be desirable.

There are several ways that page load time can be sped up, including installing software on the server. The system includes the core Internal Page Cache and Dynamic Page Cache modules, which do not require any additional server software; they use a *database cache*

mechanism to speed up your site. The way these modules work is that during page calculations, intermediate results and the final page output are stored in a special database area (known as the *cache*). Then the next time a compatible request is made, intermediate

or final results, as appropriate, can be retrieved and used rather than redoing the entire calculation. In addition, when content or data that affects a particular calculation is updated, the affected cached data is removed from the cache, forcing that part of the calculation to be redone the next time it is needed.

These caching modules normally work reasonably well, and offer at least some speed-up for most sites. However, sometimes the page cache can have problems, such as:

- Corrupted data in the cache, leading to garbled or incorrect page output
- Old data remaining in the cache too long, leading to outdated page output
- Insufficient caching, leading to slow page loads

What other data is cached?

Independent of whether the two page cache modules are installed on your site, the software that your site runs will still cache the output of many internal calculations. The core systems that cache data include:

- The theme system caches information in the database cache about which template files are used to render various types of data. If you are developing a new theme and add a new template file, you'll need to clear this cache to have your theme file recognized.

- CSS and JavaScript files can optionally be optimized and compressed (depending on your site settings). If so, the compressed versions are stored in the file system so that they don't have to be re-optimized too often. If you are developing a module or theme, you may need to either turn off or clear this file cache to have changes to CSS or JavaScript files be recognized.
- The system locates certain low-level PHP functions and classes, such as *hook implementations* and *plugin classes*, from your installed modules and stores information about which module has which functionality. If you are developing a new module or adding features to an existing module, you may need to clear this cache to have your new features be recognized.

Related topics

If you have problems with your site, the first thing to try to fix it is usually to clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#) for more information.

Additional resources

Learn about additional caching and performance optimization methods in the [Drupal.org community documentation page "Caching to improve performance"](#).

Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

12.2. Clearing the Cache

Goal

Clear or rebuild your site's internal caches to ensure they are up-to-date with the most recent data, using the user interface or Drush.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 12.1, "Concept: Cache"](#)
- [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#)

Site prerequisites

If you want to use Drush to clear the cache, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to clear the cache.

Using the administrative interface

1. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Development > Performance (admin/config/development/performance)*.
2. Click *Clear all caches*.
3. A message saying the cache has been cleared appears at the top of the page.

Using Drush

You can use one of two commands:

- Use the command `drush cache-rebuild` to clear and rebuild all cached data for a site. After running this command, you will see the output message "Cache rebuild complete."
- Use the command `drush cc` to see a list of individual caches and then choose the specific cache you would like to clear. Running this command should produce output like the following:

```
> drush cc
Enter a number to choose which cache to clear.
[0] : Cancel
[1] : drush
[2] : theme-registry
[3] : menu
[4] : css-js
[5] : block
[6] : module-list
[7] : theme-list
[8] : render
[9] : views
```

Choose a cache to clear by entering the number associated with that cache. Press "Enter" to continue.

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Clearing or rebuilding Drupal's cache"](#)

Attributions

Adapted and edited by [Joe Shindelar](#) and [Jack Haas](#) from "[Clearing or rebuilding Drupal's cache](#)", copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

12.3. Concept: Data Backups

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.1, "##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 3.3, "##### ## ##"](#)

What is a site backup?

If something happens to the computer (or computers) that your site and its database are running on, or if you lose access to this computer, you could lose some or all of your site's data. You could also lose data if your site is hacked, or if someone with administrative privileges on your site deletes or alters data mistakenly from the administrative interface. In order to prevent scenarios like this from being permanent, expensive data losses, it is important to make regular backups of your site's data, and to store them in a location that is separate from the computer where your site is running.

The frequency with which you should make data backups, and how many backups you should keep, depends on how frequently your site is changing. If you have a very large amount of content on your site that is being added to or updated many times per day, you would want to make more frequent backups than you would for a site that changes rarely. Also consider that some time could pass between when a data problem occurs and when you notice that it is a problem, so storing a sequence of backups (so that you can go back to the last known good data and retrieve that), rather than overwriting a single backup repeatedly, is a good practice.

Another consideration is that whatever format you store your backups in, it is a good idea to verify that you can actually retrieve lost data from your backups. You might want to test several possible data loss scenarios, and make sure that your data can be restored to the site in all cases.

In order to make a complete backup of your site, you will need to make copies of the following:

- The data in the *sites* directory, including the *sites/default/settings.php* file.
- The data in your site's database. A few tables can be truncated, such as those storing the temporary data cache and user login session information, but it is always safe to back up the entire database.
- Uploaded files, such as images and other attachments. The location of these files is configurable; the standard location is the *sites/default/files* directory under your site root.

In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > Media > File system (admin/config/media/file-system)* to check the file upload locations; to change them, you'll need to edit your *settings.php* file.

- Modules, themes and any other software files you have customized. You can find customized modules and themes in the *modules* and *themes* directories respectively. Some people prefer to back up all software files, including core files and contributed modules and themes (which you could recover by downloading them again from the source), rather than trying to pick out specific files that definitely need to be backed up.

You can perform a test to confirm whether your backup has been done right by making a development copy of the site (see [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)).

Related topics

- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)
- [#### 12.1, "Concept: Cache"](#)

Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Backing up a site"](#)
- The [contributed Backup and Migrate module](#), which can be used to set up automatic backups of the database and uploaded files.

Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

12.4. Concept: Log

What is a Log?

Your site captures system events in a log to be reviewed by an authorized individual at a later time. The log is a list of recorded events containing usage data, performance data, errors, warnings, and operational information. It is vital to check the log on a regular basis as it is often the only way to tell what is going on.

You can find your site's recent log messages in the *Manage* administrative menu by navigating to *Reports > Recent log messages (admin/reports/dblog)*.

Recent log messages ☆

[View](#) [Delete](#)

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Reports](#)

The Database Logging module logs system events in the Drupal database. Monitor your site or debug site problems on this page.

▼ **FILTER LOG MESSAGES**

<p>Type</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> block_content content cron language locale node system taxonomy 	<p>Severity</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emergency Alert Critical Error Warning Notice Info Debug
---	--

[Filter](#)

TYPE	DATE	MESSAGE	USER	OPERATIONS
user	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Session opened for admin.	admin	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Cron run completed.	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Execution of update_cron() took 282.93ms.	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Starting execution of update_cron(), execution of...	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Starting execution of system_cron(), execution of node...	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Starting execution of node_cron(), execution of locale...	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Starting execution of locale_cron(), execution of file...	Anonymous (not verified)	
cron	08/26/2016 - 08:37	Starting execution of file_cron(), execution of field...	Anonymous (not verified)	

Attributions

Adapted by [Diána Lakatos](#) from "[Reports](#)" copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

12.5. Concept: Status Report

What is a Status Report?

The status report is a short overview of your site's parameters as well as any problems detected with your installation. It may be useful to copy and paste this information into support requests filed on *Drupal.org's* support forums and project issue queues or when asking for help on other channels.

You can find the status report in the *Manage* administrative menu by navigating to *Reports > Status report (admin/reports/status)*.

Status report ☆

[Home](#) » [Administration](#) » [Reports](#)

Here you can find a short overview of your site's parameters as well as any problems detected with your installation. It may be useful to copy and paste this information into support requests filed on *Drupal.org's* support forums and project issue queues. Before filing a support request, ensure that your web server meets the [system requirements](#).

Drupal	8.2.0-dev
Access to update.php	Protected
Configuration files	Protected
Cron maintenance tasks	Last run 1 minute 5 seconds ago You can run cron manually . To run cron from outside the site, go to example.com/cron/N_A2qVbam3F_hvAXbBG0hHuOzorCEf3fHRbi43bWdecHN0YY9RZ_Yy5aUC_1nsiHoKb_HRjOlg?absolute=1
Database system	MySQL, MariaDB, Percona Server, or equivalent
Database system version	5.5.47-0ubuntu0.14.04.1
 Database updates	Out of date Some modules have database schema updates to install. You should run the database update script immediately.
 Drupal core update status	Unknown release date (version 8.1.8 available) There was a problem checking available updates for Drupal. See the available updates page for more information and to install your missing updates.
Entity/field definitions	Up to date
File system	Writable (<i>public</i> download method)
GD library	2.1.1-dev
GD library PNG support	2.1.1-dev

Related topics

[#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#)

Attributions

Adapted by [Diána Lakatos](#) from "[Reports](#)" copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#)

ی راده گن و تین ما 13. ل صرف

13.1. Concept: Cron

What are cron tasks?

To ensure that your site and its modules continue to function well, a group of administrative operations should be run periodically. These operations are called *cron* tasks. Examples of cron tasks are: checking for module and theme updates, indexing content for search, or cleaning up temporary files.

What is the relationship between the site's cron tasks and Unix cron?

Linux/Unix-based operating systems have a cron scheduler that can be used to run periodic tasks. You can use the server's cron scheduler to schedule runs of the site's cron tasks. Alternatively, you can use the core Automated Cron module to run tasks. You can check the site's cron tasks' status in the status report.

Related topics

- [#### 13.2, "Configuring Cron Maintenance Tasks"](#)
- [#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Setting up cron"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Diána Lakatos](#) at [Pronovix](#), [Dave Hansen-Lange](#) at [Advomatic](#), and [Boris Doesborg](#).

13.2. Configuring Cron Maintenance Tasks

Goal

Check whether cron maintenance tasks are run regularly, and if not, either install the core Automated Cron module or run cron maintenance tasks from outside the website.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"](#)

Steps

1. Review the *Status report* (see [#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)) to see when cron maintenance tasks were last run.

If you installed the website using the core Standard installation profile (or similar), then cron maintenance tasks might already be running via the core Automated Cron module. By default, these tasks are run about every three hours.

2. Choose whether to run cron maintenance tasks using the core Automated Cron module, or by other means. The core Automated Cron module might not be suitable for some websites because:
 - Each time someone accesses a page on the site, the module checks how long it has been since cron maintenance tasks have last run, and then runs them if necessary. If no one visits the website for a long time, cron maintenance tasks will not be run.
 - Cron maintenance tasks are run after the page has been generated. This means there is less time for the tasks to be run before various server timeouts are reached (for example, PHP execution timeout). If this happens, the logs (see [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#)) will show error messages that cron is unable to complete.
 - There is a small [scalability](#) cost associated with the core Automated Cron module. This is because one of the web server's processes is occupied (and can't serve other web pages) until the cron maintenance tasks are complete.
3. If you want to use the core Automated Cron module, first make sure it is installed (it is installed with the core Standard install profile; see [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) if it is not installed).

Next, configure the module to control how frequently cron maintenance tasks are run. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Configuration > System > Cron (admin/*

`config/system/cron`). Choose the desired interval in the *Cron settings* section, and click *Save configuration*.

4. If you want to run cron maintenance tasks from outside the website, uninstall the core Automated Cron module (see [#### 4.4, “Uninstalling Unused Modules”](#)). Next, find the cron URL. This URL is shown in the *Status report* (see [#### 12.5, “Concept: Status Report”](#)), and in the *Cron* administration page (see previous step). The URL looks like this: `http://www.example.com/cron/OMgWtfB33FYbbQ5UAC3LOLL3RCOPT3RNUBZILLA0Nf1Re`

Whenever this URL is visited, cron maintenance tasks will run. Set up one of the following schedulers to access this URL regularly:

- [The Cron daemon](#) (Linux, OS X, Solaris, BSD)
- [Scheduled Tasks](#) (Windows)
- A cron SASS provider (software as a service)
- A cron manager provided by your web hosting provider (see the documentation provided by your provider)

Related concepts

[#### 13.3, “Concept: Security and Regular Updates”](#)

Additional resources

- [Drush page "Running Drupal cron tasks from Drush"](#)
- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Setting up cron"](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Dave Hansen-Lange](#) at [Advomatic](#), [Boris Doesborg](#), and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

13.3. Concept: Security and Regular Updates

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.1, "#####: ##### ## ##### ## ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 1.6, "#####: #####"](#)

What are security updates?

Any software occasionally has bugs, and sometimes these bugs have security implications. When security bugs are fixed in the core software, modules, or themes that your site uses, they are released in a *security update*. You will need to apply security updates in order to keep your site secure. See [#### 13.4, "Keeping Track of Updates"](#) to learn how to be notified of security updates by email, and [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#), [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#), and [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#) to learn how to make updates.

What is the security team?

The Drupal open-source project has a team of volunteers who track security-related bugs and release security updates. They also help other developers fix bugs, and maintain information for users on how to keep their websites secure. You can learn more about the security team and their practices and processes at the [Drupal.org Security Team](#) page.

How are security bugs reported?

It is important that security problems be kept confidential until they are fixed, so that sites are less likely to be compromised before they can be secured. If you find a potential security problem in any of the software you downloaded from the *Drupal.org* website, follow the procedures on the [Drupal.org Security Team](#) page to report it.

What are regular (non-security) updates?

The core software, modules, and themes also periodically have regular updates to add new features and fix bugs. These updates are less critical than security updates. As a general best practice, updates should be applied as long as they do not cause problems with your site. Testing on a development copy of your site is always a good idea before applying updates on a live site. This is because some updates may include changes that are not compatible with the modules or themes on your site, or that will break a particular functionality on your site.

Related topics

- [#### 13.4, "Keeping Track of Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)
- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)

Additional resources

- [Drupal.org community documentation page "Securing your site"](#)
- ["Security advisories" on Drupal.org](#)
- [Drupal.org Security team](#)

Attributions

Written and edited by [Boris Doesborg](#) and [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

13.4. Keeping Track of Updates

Goal

Keep your site safe and up-to-date by keeping up with the latest security updates.

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)

Steps

There are a few different ways to receive notifications of security releases:

- In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Reports > Available updates > Settings*.
Enter the email addresses to be notified when updates are available. You can also specify whether you want daily or weekly updates. Click *Save configuration*.
- Subscribe to the security announcements email list. To subscribe, log in to *Drupal.org*, go to your user profile page and subscribe to the security newsletter on the *Edit > My newsletters* tab.
- Follow @drupalsecurity on Twitter.
- Subscribe to RSS feeds for [core security updates](#), [contributed project updates](#) and [public service announcements](#).

Related concepts

- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.5, "Updating the Core Software"](#)
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)

Additional resources

- ["Security advisories" on Drupal.org](#)
- [Drupal.org Security Team](#)

- [@drupalsecurity on Twitter](#)

Attributions

Written by [Sarah German](#) at [Advomatic](#).

13.5. Updating the Core Software

Goal

Update the core software, either through the administrative interface or by using Drush.

Site prerequisites

- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).
- If your site is live, you should test this process in a development environment before running it on your production site. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).

Steps

1. Make a complete backup of your site. Refer to [#### 12.3, "Concept: Data Backups"](#).
2. Open `settings.php (/sites/default/settings.php)` in any plain text editor. Find the line with the `$settings[update free access]` variable. By default, it is set to "FALSE" due to security reasons. Change the setting to "TRUE":

```
$settings['update_free_access'] = TRUE;
```
3. Disable any caching technique (memcache, varnish, and so on) your application might be using.
4. Put your site in maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
5. If you are using Composer to manage dependencies, or using Git, skip the next six steps, and instead see [#### 11.9, "Using Composer and Git to Download Files"](#) for instructions on downloading updated files. Continue with the `update.php` step.

16. Take your site out of maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
17. Clear the cache. See [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#).
18. Re-enable any caching technique you disabled at Step ³.
19. You should have the updated version running. You can verify the current version of your software by checking the *Status report* (see [#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)).

Expand your understanding

- [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#)
- [#### 12.3, "Concept: Data Backups"](#)

Related concepts

[#### 12.5, "Concept: Status Report"](#)

Additional resources

- ["Drupal Core Downloads" page on Drupal.org](#)
- ["Registry Rebuild" page on Drupal.org](#)
- The file `/core/UPDATE.txt` within your installation.

Attributions

Written and edited by [Surendra Mohan](#), [Boris Doesborgh](#), and [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

13.6. Updating a Module

Goal

Update a contributed module and run the *Database updates* script.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 13.3, “Concept: Security and Regular Updates”](#)
- [#### 13.1, “Concept: Cron”](#)

Site prerequisites

- A contributed module has been installed and there is an update available for it. See [#### 11.3, “Downloading and Installing a Module from Drupal.org”](#) and [#### 13.4, “Keeping Track of Updates”](#).
- If your site is live, you should test this process in a development environment before running it on your production site. See [#### 11.8, “Making a Development Site”](#).
- You have created a full-site backup. See [#### 12.3, “Concept: Data Backups”](#).
- If you want to use the user interface, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See [#### 4.3, “Installing a Module”](#) for instructions on installing core modules.
- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, “#####: #####”](#).

Steps

Before you start, check for module-specific update instructions. This is typically necessary while updating modules that involve the usage of third-party libraries. Read and understand all module-specific requirements before proceeding with the updates. To find instructions, check the module’s project page *Read Documentation* link.

To view further instructions, download the tar.gz or .zip file from the project page to your local computer. Unzip the file and look for *README.txt*, *INSTALL.txt*, and *UPGRADE.txt* that come with the module’s installation file. Also, review the release notes on the project page by clicking the version number you’re downloading.

Downloads

Version	Download	Date
8.x-1.19	tar.gz (17.07 KB) zip (27.02 KB)	2017-Apr-06
Development releases		
8.x-1.x-dev	tar.gz (19.49 KB) zip (29.81 KB)	2017-Jun-11

[View all releases](#)

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to update a contributed module. If you are updating a custom module rather than a contributed module, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to obtain the new module files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, “Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files”](#). You can then continue here with step 6 in the instructions for the administrative interface below.

Using the administrative interface

1. Put your site in maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, “Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode”](#).
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Reports > Available updates > Update* (*admin/reports/updates/update*).
3. Find and check the module in the list. Click *Download these updates* for the module.

Update ☆

List Update Settings

Home » Administration » Reports » Available updates

Last checked: 4 minutes 5 seconds ago ([Check manually](#))

<input type="checkbox"/>	NAME	INSTALLED VERSION	RECOMMENDED VERSION
<input type="checkbox"/>	Admin Toolbar	8.x-1.15	8.x-1.16 (Release notes)

[Download these updates](#)

Manual updates required

Updates of Drupal core are not supported at this time.

NAME	INSTALLED VERSION	RECOMMENDED VERSION
Drupal core	8.2.0-dev	8.1.8 (Release notes)

4. Click *Continue*.

5. Click *Run database updates*. If you obtained the new module files manually, start with this step, and reach the database updates page by typing the URL *example.com/update.php* in your browser.
6. Click *Continue* and apply all updates. The database update scripts will be executed.
7. Click *Administration pages* to return to the administration section of your site.
8. Take your site out of maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, "Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode"](#).
9. Clear the cache (refer to [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#)).

Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the module you wish to update. It is the last segment of the module's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is *https://www.drupal.org/project/admin_toolbar*, the project name is "admin_toolbar".
2. Run the following Drush command, giving the project name (for example, `admin_toolbar`) as a parameter (if you have more than one module to update, add the additional module project names to the end of the command, separated by spaces):

```
drush up admin_toolbar
```
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Expand your understanding

- Review the site log (refer to [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#)) once the updates are complete to check for errors.
- [#### 13.7, "Updating a Theme"](#)

Additional resources

[Drupal.org community documentation page "Updating modules"](#)

Attributions

Adapted by [Boris Doesborgh](#), and [Sarah German](#) at [Advomatic](#), from ["Updating modules"](#), copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).

13.7. Updating a Theme

Goal

Update a contributed theme on your site and run the *Database Updates* script.

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#)
- [#### 13.1, "Concept: Cron"](#)

Site prerequisites

- A contributed theme has been installed and there is an update available for it. See [#### 11.5, "Downloading and Installing a Theme from Drupal.org"](#) and [#### 13.4, "Keeping Track of Updates"](#).
- If your site is live, you should test this process in a development environment before running it on your production site. See [#### 11.8, "Making a Development Site"](#).
- You have created a full site backup. See [#### 12.3, "Concept: Data Backups"](#).
- If you want to use the user interface, the core Update Manager module must be installed. See [#### 4.3, "Installing a Module"](#) for instructions on installing core modules.
- If you want to use Drush, Drush must be installed. See [#### 3.2, "#####: #####"](#).

Steps

You can use the administrative interface or Drush to update a contributed theme. If you are updating a custom theme rather than a contributed theme, if you see a message saying *Installing modules and themes requires FTP access to your server*, or if the steps below do not work to obtain the new theme files, follow the steps in [#### 11.6, "Manually Downloading Module or Theme Files"](#), and then continue with step 6 in the instructions for administrative interface below.

Using the administrative interface

1. Put your site in maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, “Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode”](#).
2. In the *Manage* administrative menu, navigate to *Reports > Available updates > Update* (*admin/reports/updates/update*).
3. Find and check the theme in the list. Click *Download these updates* for the theme.

Update ☆

List Update Settings

Home » Administration » Reports » Available updates

Last checked: 1 minute 1 second ago (Check manually)

<input type="checkbox"/>	NAME	INSTALLED VERSION	RECOMMENDED VERSION
<input type="checkbox"/>	MAYO (Theme)	8.x-1.2	8.x-1.3 (Release notes)

Download these updates

Manual updates required

Updates of Drupal core are not supported at this time.

NAME	INSTALLED VERSION	RECOMMENDED VERSION
Drupal core	8.2.0-dev	8.1.8 (Release notes)

4. Click *Continue*.
5. Click *Run database updates*. If you obtained the new theme files manually, start with this step, and reach the database updates page by typing the URL *example.com/update.php* in your browser.
6. Click *Continue* to run the updates. The database update scripts will be executed.
7. Click *Administration pages* to return to the administration section of your site.
8. Take your site out of maintenance mode. See [#### 11.2, “Enabling and Disabling Maintenance Mode”](#).

9. Clear the Drupal cache (refer to [#### 12.2, "Clearing the Cache"](#)).

Using Drush

1. Find the project name for the theme you wish to update, which is the last segment of the theme's project page URL. For example, if the project URL is *https://www.drupal.org/project/mayo*, the project name is "mayo".
2. Run the following Drush command, giving the project name (for example, ^{mayo}) as a parameter:

```
drush up mayo
```
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Expand your understanding

- Review the site log, see [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#), once the updates are complete to check for errors.
- [#### 13.6, "Updating a Module"](#)

Attributions

Written by [Boris Doesborg](#).

رخ آنخس 14. ل صرف

14.1. Connecting with the Community

Prerequisite knowledge

[#### 1.6, "#####: ##### #####"](#)

How can you connect with the community?

The Drupal project has a world-wide community of developers and users. One of the best ways to improve your knowledge of the platform is to connect with others that are using it, and get involved in the open-source community. There are many ways that you can get started:

Attend an event

There are both regional and international Drupal events held around the world. See the ["DrupalCon" page on Drupal.org](#) to find international events, and the ["Event Calendar" on groups.drupal.org](#) or [drupalical.com](#) to find regional events.

Join a local group

There are Drupal user groups all around the world. Many of them have regular meetings, which you can attend to learn more about Drupal and connect to other Drupal users. Find local user groups on [groups.drupal.org](#).

Participate in a topical or language group

There are also interest groups for a wide range of topics, which have on-line discussion forums. Find topical groups on [groups.drupal.org](#). Many languages have their own websites too; you can find them on the ["Language-specific communities" page on Drupal.org](#).

Chat online

The Drupal project uses IRC for on-line chatting. There are regional, topical, and general-purpose chat groups available. Find out more on the ["IRC" page on Drupal.org](#).

Report a problem

See below.

Contribute

You can contribute your time and expertise to the community in many ways, such as:

- Developing modules or themes. See the ["Contribute to Development" page on Drupal.org](#), or improving them (using the issue queues for existing projects).
- Translating the user interface. See localize.drupal.org.
- Writing documentation. See ["Contribute to Documentation" on Drupal.org](#).
- Answer Support questions. See [#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#).

How can you report a problem or suggest a feature?

Each project within the community (such as the Drupal Core project for the base software, and projects for each contributed theme and module) uses *issues* to keep track of software

bugs and plans for new features. You can participate by creating a bug report when you find a problem, creating a feature request, or commenting on existing issues. Search before creating an issue, to make sure that the problem or feature has not already been reported or requested. See the [Drupal.org page "Use the issue queue"](#) and the [Drupal.org page "Reporting a problem"](#) for more information.

If you find a problem that you believe is related to security, such as a cross-site scripting vulnerability, do not report it in the standard issue queue. Instead, report it to the security team. See the [Drupal.org page "How to report a security issue"](#) for details.

Related topics

[#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#)

Additional resources

- ["Code of Conduct" on Drupal.org](#)
- ["Event Calendar" on groups.drupal.org](#) or drupal.com
- ["Where is the Drupal Community?" page on Drupal.org](#)
- groups.drupal.org
- ["IRC" page on Drupal.org](#)
- ["Ways to get involved" page on Drupal.org](#)

- [Drupal.org page "Why get involved?"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "Contributor tasks"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "Use the issue queue"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "Reporting a problem"](#)
- [Drupal.org page "How to report a security issue"](#)

Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#).

14.2. Getting Support

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.6, "#####: #####"](#)
- [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

Where can you find support?

The Drupal project is open-source, so if you have questions about or problems with the software, your options for finding answers and fixes are somewhat different from what they would be for commercial software.

There are several options for free support provided by community volunteers. First, some IRC channels, local groups, and language communities encourage support questions, through on-line chat, in-person meetings, or websites (find out more about these on [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)).

Second, some (but not all) contributed module, distribution, and theme projects encourage you to post support requests in issues. Generally, projects that have a very large number of users do not allow support requests in their issues (Drupal Core is in that category), while projects with a smaller number of users welcome the occasional support question. Be respectful of developer time and read the documentation for the project before posting a question in an issue. On the other hand, all projects encourage you to use issues to report problems and bugs; see [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#) to learn more about that.

In addition to those resources, the following sites provide free forums where volunteers answer support questions about Drupal:

- The [Drupal.org Forums](#)
- ["Drupal Answers" on StackExchange](#)

If you prefer to pay for support (presumably in exchange for more extensive service or better availability), you can find service providers in the ["Drupal Marketplace" on Drupal.org](#).

Related topics

- [#### 14.3, "Learning More"](#)
- [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

Additional resources

- ["Support" page on Drupal.org](#)
- ["Drupal Marketplace" on Drupal.org](#)
- The [Drupal.org Forums](#)
- ["Drupal Answers" on StackExchange](#)

Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

14.3. Learning More

Prerequisite knowledge

- [#### 1.6, "#####: ##### #####"](#)
- [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#)

Where can you go to learn more?

The following resources should prove useful to you, as you continue to advance your skills:

["Drupal Community Documentation" section on Drupal.org](#)

Wiki-like documentation contributed by the Drupal community, ranging from basic to advanced, about all aspects of Drupal (site building and administration, theming, development, and contributed modules).

[api.drupal.org](#)

Reference documentation for programmers about the Drupal API.

["Drupal Planet" page on Drupal.org](#)

An aggregation of blog posts about Drupal from around the web, posted by blogging members of the Drupal community who have applied for inclusion. Topics range from programming to site building to Drupal news.

Groups, events, and meetups

See [#### 14.1, "Connecting with the Community"](#) for more about topical, regional, and language groups, as well as local, regional, and international events.

["Training Marketplace" page on Drupal.org](#)

The Marketplace lists paid training providers. For free training, check whether events include training sessions; there are also free or very low-cost training events listed on the ["Global Training Days" page on Drupal.org](#).

Support sites

See [#### 14.2, "Getting Support"](#) to locate support forums; searching them can be useful for learning about specific topics.

Attributions

Written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), and [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#).

ناگڙاؤ

Ajax

A web technology used to exchange data with a server to dynamically update parts of a web page (for example, forms) without needing entire page reloads.

Alias

A user-friendly name to replace the internal [path](#) that the system assigns to a URL on the site. For example, you might assign an alias of */about* to the About page on your site, to replace the internal path */node/5*. This would give the page a URL of *http://example.com/about* instead of *http://example.com/node/5*. See [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#) for more information.

Anonymous

A person ([user](#)) interacting with the site who is not logged in. See [#### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#) for more information.

Block

A chunk of [content](#) (text, images, links, etc.) that can be displayed on a page of a site. Blocks are displayed in [regions](#). See [#### 8.1, "Concept: Blocks"](#) for more information.

Breakpoint

Breakpoints are used to separate the height or width of browser screens, printers, and other media output types into steps. A [responsive](#) site adjusts its presentation at these breakpoints. See [#### 6.14, "Concept: Responsive Image Styles"](#) for more information.

Bundle

Synonym for [Entity subtype](#).

Cache

The site's internal cache stores the output of time-consuming calculations, such as computing output for an HTML page request, and then retrieves them instead of recalculating the next time they are needed. External caching systems can also be used on the web server to speed up a site's response. See [#### 12.1, "Concept: Cache"](#) for more information on the internal cache.

CMS

Acronym for [Content Management System](#).

Configuration

Information about your site that is not [content](#), and is meant to be more permanent than [state](#) information, such as the name of your site, the [content types](#) and [views](#) you have defined, etc. See [##### 1.5, "#####: ##### #####"](#) for more information.

Content

Information meant to be displayed on your site, such as text, images, downloads, etc. See also [Configuration](#) and [State](#). See [##### 1.5, "#####: ##### #####"](#) for more information.

Content item

An item of [content](#) that is typically meant to be displayed as the main content of a page on your site. This is an [entity type](#). See [##### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#) for more information.

Content Management System (CMS)

A collection of tools designed to allow the creation, modification, organization, search, retrieval and removal of information on a website. See [##### 1.1, "#####: ##### # ##### # # ##### # # ##### # # ##### # # #####"](#) for more information.

Content type

An [entity subtype](#) for the [content item entity type](#). Each content type is used for some particular purpose on the site, and each has its own fields. For example, a site for a farmers market might have a content type for simple pages, and another for a vendor listing page. See [##### 2.3, "#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#) for more information.

Contextual link

A link to an administrative page for editing or configuring a feature of the site, shown in the context where that feature is displayed. Example: a link to configure a [menu](#) that is shown when you hover your mouse over the menu. See [##### 4.1, "Concept: Administrative Overview"](#) for more information.

Contributed

[Modules](#), [themes](#), and [distributions](#) that are not part of the [Drupal core](#) download, and that can be downloaded separately from the [Drupal.org](#) website.

Entity type

The overall type of an [entity](#); in common usage, it is only applied to a [content](#) entity.

Examples include [content types](#), [taxonomy terms](#), and custom [blocks](#). See [#### 2.3](#),

["#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#) for more information.

Field

Data of a certain type that is attached to a [contententity](#). For instance, on a farmers market

site's vendor content type, you might have fields for an image, the vendor description, and a [taxonomy term](#). See [#### 2.3](#), ["#####: ##### # ##### #####"](#) for more

information.

Field bundle

Synonym for [Entity subtype](#).

Field formatter

[Configuration](#) that defines how the data in a [field](#) is displayed. For example, a text field

could be displayed with a prefix and/or suffix, and it could have its HTML tags stripped out or limited. See also [View mode](#) and [Field widget](#). See [#### 6.10](#), ["Concept: View Modes](#)

[and Formatters"](#) for more information.

Field widget

[Configuration](#) that defines how someone can enter or edit data for a [field](#) on a data entry

form. For example, a text field could use a single-line or multi-line entry box, and there could be a setting for the size of the box. See also [Field formatter](#). See [#### 6.8](#), ["Concept:](#)

[Forms and Widgets"](#) for more information.

Formatter

See [Field formatter](#).

FOSS

Acronym for *Free and Open Source Software*, meaning software that is developed by a community of people and released under a non-commercial license. See also [GPL](#). See

[#### 1.6](#), ["#####: #####"](#) for more information.

GPL

Acronym for the *GNU General Public License*, a non-commercial software license. All software downloaded from the Drupal.org website is licensed under the "[GNU General Public License, version 2](#)". See also [FOSS](#). See [#### 1.7, "#####: #### #####"](#) for more information.

Image style

A set of processing steps that transform a base image into a new image; typical processing includes scaling and cropping. See [#### 6.12, "Concept: Image Styles"](#) for more information.

LAMP

Acronym for *Linux, Apache, MySQL, and PHP*: the software on the web server that the scripts commonly run on (although it can use other operating systems, web servers, and databases). See [#### 3.1, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

Log

A list of recorded events on the site, such as usage data, performance data, errors, warnings, and operational information. See [#### 12.4, "Concept: Log"](#) for more information.

Menu

A set of links used for navigation on a site, which may be arranged in a hierarchy. See [#### 5.6, "Concept: Menu"](#) for more information.

Module

Software (usually PHP, JavaScript, and/or CSS) that extends site features and adds functionality. The Drupal project distinguishes between [core](#) and [contributed](#) modules.

See [#### 1.2, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

Path

The unique, last part of the internal URL that the system assigns to a page on the site, which can be a visitor-facing page or an administrative page. For example, the internal URL for the About page on your site might be <http://example.com/node/5>, and in this case, the path is *node/5*. See also [Alias](#). See [#### 5.1, "Concept: Paths, Aliases, and URLs"](#) for more information.

Permission

The ability to perform some action on the site, such as editing a particular type of [content](#), or viewing user profiles. See also [Role](#). See [#### 7.1, “Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions”](#) for more information.

Reference field

A [field](#) that represents a relationship between an [entity](#) and one or more other entities, which may be the same [entity type](#) or a different type. For example, on a farmers market site, a recipe content item might have a reference field to the vendor (also a content item) that posted the recipe. [Taxonomy term](#) fields are also reference fields. See [#### 6.4, “Concept: Reference Fields”](#) for more information.

Region

A defined area of a page where [content](#) can be placed, such as the header, footer, main content area, left sidebar, etc. Regions are defined by [themes](#), and the content displayed in each region is contained in [blocks](#). See [#### 2.1, “#####: ##### ## ## #####”](#) for more information.

Responsive

A site or [theme](#) is said to be responsive if it adjusts its presentation in response to the size of the browser screen, printer, or other media output type. See also [Breakpoint](#). See [#### 6.14, “Concept: Responsive Image Styles”](#) for more information.

Revision

A record of the past or present state of a [contententity](#), as it is edited over time. See [#### 2.6, “#####: #####”](#) for more information.

Role

A named set of [permissions](#) that can be applied to a [user account](#). See [#### 7.1, “Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions”](#) for more information.

Security update

An [update](#) that fixes a security-related bug, such as a hacking vulnerability. See [#### 13.3, “Concept: Security and Regular Updates”](#) for more information.

State

Information of a temporary nature about the current state of your site, such as the time when [cron](#) was last run, etc. See also [Content](#) and [Configuration](#). See [##### 1.5, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

Taxonomy

The process of classifying [content](#). See [##### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#) for more information.

Taxonomy term

A term used to classify [content](#), such as a tag or a category. See also [Vocabulary](#). See [##### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#) for more information.

Text format

[Configuration](#) that defines the processing that happens to user-entered text before it is shown in the browser. This might include stripping or limiting HTML tags, or turning URLs into links. See [##### 6.15, "Concept: Text Formats and Editors"](#) for more information.

Theme

Software and asset files (images, CSS, PHP code, and/or templates) that determine the style and layout of the site. The Drupal project distinguishes between [core](#) and [contributed](#) themes. See [##### 1.3, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

UI

Acronym for [User Interface](#).

Update

A newer version of your site's software, either [Drupal core](#) or a [module](#) or [theme](#). See also [Security update](#). See [##### 13.3, "Concept: Security and Regular Updates"](#) for more information.

User

A person interacting with the site, either logged-in or [anonymous](#). See [##### 7.1, "Concept: Users, Roles, and Permissions"](#) for more information.

User interface

The text, styles, and images that are visible on a site, separated logically into the user interface for site visitors and the administrative user interface.

User one (User 1)

The initial [user](#) account that is created when you install the site (whose ID number is 1). It automatically has all [permissions](#), even if it is not assigned an administrative [role](#). See [#### 7.2, "Concept: The User 1 Account"](#) for more information.

View

A formatted listing of data; typically, the data comes from [contententities](#). For example, on a farmers market site, you might create a [content item](#) for each vendor. You could then make view that generates a listing page that shows a thumbnail image and short description of each vendor, linking to the full-page content item. Using the same data, you could also make a view that generates a new vendors block, which would show information from the most recently added vendors. See [#### 2.4, "#####: #####"](#) for more information.

View mode

A set of [field formatterconfiguration](#) for all of the [fields](#) of a [contententity](#), some of which may be hidden. Each [entity subtype](#) can have one or more view modes defined; for example, [content types](#) typically have *Full* and *Teaser* view modes, where the *Teaser* view mode displays fewer or trimmed-down fields. See [#### 6.10, "Concept: View Modes and Formatters"](#) for more information.

Vocabulary

A group of [taxonomy terms](#) to choose from when classifying [content](#) in a particular way, such as the list of all of the vendor categories on a farmers market site. Technically, vocabularies are the [entity subtype](#) for the taxonomy term [entity type](#). See [#### 6.5, "Concept: Taxonomy"](#) for more information.

Widget

See [Field widget](#).

Wizard

A web form that allows you to fill in a few values, and creates something with sensible defaults based on the values you chose. For example, there are wizards for creating [views](#) of different types. See [#### 9.3, "Creating a Content List View"](#) for more information.

WYSIWYG

Acronym for *What You See is What You Get*, meaning a method for editing [content](#) where what you see on the editing screen closely resembles the final product. See [#### 6.16, "Configuring Text Formats and Editors"](#) for more information.

ه ی امن

A

Account setting, 44
 configuring, 44
Admin Toolbar module
 downloading, 169
 installing, 169
Administration
 overview, 35
Administrative interface
 using to update the core software, 209
Administrative menu
 overview, 35, 81
Administrative user account
 overview, 109
Ajax
 definition, 223
Alias
 definition, 223
 overview, 52
Anonymous
 definition, 223
Anonymous user
 overview, 109
Apache web server
 version requirements, 22
Appearance menu entry
 administrative menu, 35
 overview, 242
Attributions for this document, 109
Authenticated user
 overview, 109
Author
 assigning, 122
Automated Cron module
 configuring, 204
 overview, 203

B

Backup
 overview, 198
Bartik theme
 configuring, 47
 regions in, 41
Basic page
 creating, 53
Block

 creating, 125
 creating from a view, 143
 definition, 14
 entity type, 125
 overview, 128
 placing in a region, 128
Breadcrumb region
 overview, 119
Breakpoint
 definition, 223
 overview, 105
Bug
 reporting, 206, 218
Bundle
 definition, 223
C
Cache
 clearing, 196
 definition, 223
 overview, 195
 rebuilding, 196
 218, 220
Chatting online, 107
CKEditor module
 configuring, 107
CKEditor text editor
 default assignment to text format, 107
CMS (Content Management System)
 definition, 223
 overview, 1
Coder tool
 overview, 23
Color scheme
 configuring, 47
Comment entity type
 overview, 14
Comment module
 entity type, 14
Community
 connecting with, 218
Composer tool
 overview, 23
 using to download modules, 186
 using to download the core software, 186
 using to download themes, 186
Composite page
 creating with modular content, 16
Configuration
 as a type of data, 6

- 189
- copying, 224
- definition, 189
- deploying, 192
- synchronizing between development and live site, 149, 157
- translating, 150
- Configuration Manager module
 - using to synchronize the configuration between a development and live site, 192
- Configuration menu entry
 - administrative menu, 35
- Configuration Translation module
 - installing, 149
 - overview, 150
- Configuring 152
 - content translation, 39
 - home page, 38
 - site, 107
 - text format, 107
- Contact form entity type
 - overview, 14
- Contact module
 - entity type, 14
- Content 62
 - adding to menu while editing, 8
 - as a type of data, 122
 - assigning author, 198
 - backing up, 224
 - definition, 97
 - displaying, 59, 57
 - editing, 92
 - editing entry form, 14
 - entity type, 35
 - finding, 16
 - modular, 149, 155
 - translating, 152
 - translation, 242
- Content attributions for this document, 242
- Content display 97
 - changing, 97
 - managing, 97
- Content editing form
 - overview, 91
- Content entity type
 - overview, 14
- Content item 33
 - creating, 224
 - definition, 33
- Content list view
 - creating, 134
- Content Management System (CMS) 223, 224
 - definition, 1
 - overview, 1
- Content menu entry 35
 - administrative menu, 35
- Content reference field 88
 - adding, 80
 - overview, 88
- Content region 11
 - overview, 11
- Content structure 17
 - planning, 17
- Content Translation module 150
 - installing, 149
 - overview, 150
- Content type 88
 - adding, 75
 - adding field to, 224
 - definition, 73
 - deleting, 73
- Contextual filters part of view 152
 - overview, 152
- Contextual link 224
 - definition, 35
 - overview, 35
- Contributed 224
 - definition, 224
- Contributed module 224
 - definition, 169, 179, 186
 - downloading, 161
 - evaluating, 181
 - finding, 169
 - installing, 3
 - overview, 211
 - updating, 211
- Contributed theme 224
 - definition, 175, 179, 186
 - downloading, 179
 - enabling, 172
 - evaluating, 192
 - finding, 175
 - installing, 215
 - updating, 218
- Contributing to the project, 242
- Copyright for this document, 242
- Core module 3
 - overview, 3
- Core software

- installation requirements, 22
 - installing, 209
 - updating,
 - Core theme 4
 - overview,
 - Country setting 38
 - configuring,
 - Cron command scheduler
 - definition, 224
 - Cron task 204
 - configuring, 224
 - definition, 203
 - overview,
 - Cross-site scripting (XSS)
 - preventing, 106
 - Custom block 125
 - creating, 14
 - entity type,
 - Custom block module 14
 - entity type,
 - Custom menu 81
 - overview,
 - Custom theme 175
 - enabling, 175
 - installing, 4
 - overview,
- D**
- Data type 6
 - configuration, 6
 - content, 6
 - overview, 6
 - session, 6
 - state,
 - Database 198
 - backing up,
 - configuring during the installation process, 22
 - installation requirements, 22
 - Deployment workflow 182
 - overview,
 - Devel tool 23
 - overview,
 - Development site 183
 - making, 182
 - overview,
 - synchronizing with live site, 192
 - Disk space 22
 - installation requirements,
 - Display part of view 132
 - overview,
 - Distribution 225
 - definition, 6
 - full-featured,
 - overview, 6
 - quick-start,
 - Documentation 221
 - about Drupal, 221
 - about the Drupal API, 221
 - available on drupal.org, 221
 - contributed by the Drupal Community, 221
 - Drupal Planet blog posts, 221
 - for programmers,
 - Downloading 25, 186
 - core software, 186
 - module, 175, 186
 - module or theme files manually, 179
 - theme,
 - Drupal Association 7
 - overview,
 - Drupal Console tool 25
 - overview,
 - Drupal content management system
 - overview, 1
 - server requirements,
 - Drupal core 225
 - definition, 28
 - installing, 1
 - overview, 25
 - preparing install,
 - Drupal licensing 5
 - overview,
 - Drupal project 218
 - connecting with,
 - overview,
 - Drupal training 221
 - resources for,
 - Drupal user group 218
 - finding,
 - Drupal.org website
 - downloading and installing module from, 189
 - downloading and installing theme from, 175
 - downloading modules and themes from, 181
 - finding and evaluating modules on, 172
 - finding and evaluating themes on,
 - Drush tool

overview, 23
 using to download and install module, 169
 using to download and install theme, 175
 using to install the core software, 25
 using to uninstall module, 41
 using to update module, 211
 using to update the core software, 209
 using to update theme, 215
 Dynamic Page Cache module
 overview, 95

E 55, 57

Editing content, 55, 57
 Editor 107
 configuring, 107
 Editor module 107
 configuring, 107
 Editorial Workflow
 overview, 20
 Effect 100, 101
 image, 100
 Email address 38
 configuring, 38
 Enabling 169
 module, 175
 theme, 175
 Entity 225
 definition, 14
 overview, 14
 Entity reference field 88
 adding, 88
 Entity subtype 225
 definition, 14
 overview, 14
 Entity type 225
 definition, 14
 overview, 14
 Entity view mode 96
 overview, 96
 Error 200
 log report, 200
 Error page 38
 configuring, 38
 Event 218
 Drupal, 218
 Extend menu entry 35
 administrative menu, 35

F

Farmers market
 usage scenario for this document, 
 Feature 189
 copying, 189
 deploying, 189
 Featured regions 111
 overview, 111
 Field 75
 adding to content type, 80
 content reference, 226
 definition, 88
 for adding references, 14, 91
 overview, 80
 reference, 80
 taxonomy term reference, 80
 user reference, 80
 Field bundle 226
 definition, 226
 Field formatter 226
 definition, 96
 overview, 96
 Field module 3
 overview, 3
 Field UI module 3
 overview, 3
 Field widget 226
 definition, 226
 Fields part of view 132
 overview, 132
 File 198
 backing up, 198
 File module 14
 entity type, 14
 Filter criteria part of view 132
 overview, 132
 Filter module 107
 configuring, 107
 First day of week 38
 configuring, 38
 Footer menu 61
 overview, 61
 Footer regions 111
 overview, 111
 Form 91
 overview, 91
 Form entity type 14
 overview, 14

- Format part of view
 - overview, 132
- Formatter 226
 - definition, 96
 - overview,
- Forum 220
 - user support,
- FOSS (Free and Open Source Software) 226
 - definition, 7
 - overview,
- Free and Open Source Software (FOSS) 226
 - definition, 7
 - overview,
- Front page 38, 59
 - configuring, 57
- Full editor,
- Full-featured distribution 6
 - overview,
- Functionality 169
 - extending,
- G**
- Git tool 23
 - overview, 223
- Glossary,
- GNU General Public License 226
 - definition, 9
 - overview,
- GPL (General Public License or GNU General Public License) 226
 - definition, 9
 - overview,
- Group 218
 - finding,
- Guiding scenario for this document (farmers market),
- H**
- Header region 11
 - overview,
- Help menu entry 35
 - administrative menu,
- Help region 11
 - overview,
- Hiawatha web server 22
 - version requirements,
- Highlighted region 11
 - overview,
- Home page
 - configuring, 59
 - creating, 59
- HTML5 picture tag 105
 - and responsive images,
- I**
- Image 101
 - resizing,
- Image effect 100
 - overview,
- Image field 75
 - adding,
- Image module 134
 - creating a view,
- Image style 101
 - creating, 227
 - definition, 100
 - overview, 105
 - responsive, 57
- In-place editor, 28
- Installation process 28
- Installation profile,
- Installation requirements 22
 - database, 22
 - disk space, 22
 - overview,
 - PHP programming language, 22
 - web server,
- Installer tool 28
 - running,
- Installing 22, 25
 - core software, 182
 - development site, 169
 - module, 182
 - staging site, 175
 - theme,
- Interest group 218
 - finding,
- Interface Translation module 150
 - installing, 149
 - overview,
- Internal Page Cache module 195
 - overview,
- Internet Relay Chat (IRC) 218, 220
 - using to chat online,
- IRC (Internet Relay Chat) 218, 220
 - using to chat online,

L

- Label 157
 - translating,
- LAMP (Linux Apache MySQL PHP) 227
 - definition,
- Language 150
 - adding,
- Language module 150
 - installing, 149
 - overview,
- Layout 12
 - planning,
- Learning resource 221
 - link to,
- Legal 9
 - overview,
- Licensing 9
 - overview,
- Linux Apache MySQL PHP (LAMP) 227
 - definition,
- Listing content 134
 - using Views module to,
- Live site 192
 - synchronizing with development site,
- Locale setting 38
 - configuring,
- Log 227
 - definition, 200
 - overview,
- Logo image 47
 - configuring,

M

- Maintenance mode 166
 - disabling, 166
 - enabling, 166
 - overview,
- Manage administrative menu 35
 - overview,
- Manually downloading module or theme files 179
 - overview,
- Menu 62
 - adding a link to page, 61
 - administrative, 61
 - custom, 227
 - definition, 61
 - footer, 61
 - main, 61
 - overview, 61
 - user account, 61
- Menu items 65
 - reordering,
- Menu region 11
 - overview,
- Menu UI module 3
 - overview,
- Metadata 83
 - creating,
- Microsoft IIS web server 22
 - version requirements,
- Modular content 16
 - overview,
- Module 169
 - Admin Toolbar, 107
 - CKEditor, 14
 - Comment, 192
 - Configuration Manager, 149, 150
 - Configuration Translation, 14
 - Contact, 149, 150
 - Content Translation, 3, 169
 - contributed, 3
 - core, 169
 - custom, 14
 - Custom Block, 227
 - definition, 169, 179, 186
 - downloading, 195
 - Dynamic Page Cache, 107
 - Editor, 40, 169
 - enabling, 161
 - evaluating, 3
 - Field, 3
 - Field UI, 14
 - File, 107
 - Filter, 161
 - finding, 134
 - Image, 40, 169
 - installing, 149, 150
 - Interface Translation, 195
 - Internal Page Cache, 149, 150
 - Language, 3
 - Menu UI, 3, 14
 - Node, 3
 - overview, 14
 - Taxonomy, 41
 - uninstalling unused, 169, 175
 - Update Manager, 211
 - updating,

- 3, 14
- User, 3, 134, 138, 143
- Views, 3
- Views UI,
- Multilingual modules
 - enabling, 150
 - installing,
- MySQL database
 - version requirements, 22
- N**
- Navigation
 - changing the order of menu items, 65
 - linking menu to page, 62
- Nginx web server
 - version requirements, 22
- Node module
 - entity type, 3
 - overview,
- P**
- Page
 - adding to menu while editing, 62
 - composite,
- Page cache
 - overview, 195
- Path
 - definition, 227
 - overview, 52
- People menu entry
 - administrative menu, 35
- Performance
 - improving, 41
 - log report, 200
 - status report, 201
- Permission
 - changing, 117
 - changing role, 119
 - definition, 227
 - denying, 117
 - granting, 109
 - overview,
- PHP programming language
 - version requirements, 22
- PHP version
 - status report, 201
- Planning
 - site layout, 12
- PostgreSQL database
 - version requirements, 22
- Primary menu
 - region
 - overview,
- Profile
 - installation, 28
- Published flag
 - overview, 20
- Q**
 - 57
 - Quick editor,
 - Quick-start distribution
 - overview,
- R**
- Reference field
 - adding, 80
 - content, 228
 - definition, 80
 - overview, 80
 - taxonomy term, 80
 - user, 80
- Region
 - breadcrumb, 11
 - content, 228
 - definition, 11
 - featured, 11
 - footer, 11
 - header, 11
 - help, 11
 - highlighted, 11
 - menu, 11
 - overview, 128
 - placing a block in, 11
 - primary menu, 11
 - secondary menu, 11
 - sidebar,
- Regional setting
 - configuring, 38
- Relationships, part of view
 - overview, 32
- Report
 - Recent log messages, 200
- Reports menu entry
 - administrative menu, 35
- Resource
 - documentation and training, 221
- Responsive
 - definition, 228
- Responsive image style
 - overview, 105

- Revision 228
 - definition, 20
 - overview,
- Role 112
 - administrator, 112
 - anonymous user, 112
 - authenticated user, 119
 - changing, 117
 - changing permission, 112
 - creating, 228
 - definition, 109
 - overview,
- S**
- Scenario for this document (farmers market)
 - overview, 115
- Secondary menu region
 - overview,
- Security 117
 - assigning permission, 106
 - cross-site scripting, 44
 - managing user accounts, 206
 - overview, 201
 - status report, 106
 - text format, 44
 - user account settings, 191
 - user one account,
- Security announcement 208
 - subscribing to by email, 208
 - subscribing to on Twitter,
- Security bug 206
 - reporting,
- Security team 206
 - overview,
- Security update 211, 215
 - applying, 228
 - definition, 208
 - keeping track of,
- Server information 201
 - status report,
- Session 6
 - as a type of data,
- Sidebar regions
 - overview,
- Site email address 38
 - configuring,
- Site information 201
 - status report,
- Site layout
 - planning, 12
- Site name 38
 - configuring,
- Site plan 17
 - content structure,
- Site slogan 38
 - configuring,
- Site tagline 38
 - configuring,
- Slogan 38
 - configuring,
- Software dependencies 186
 - managing,
- Software version 201
 - status report,
- Sort criteria part of view 132
 - overview,
- SQLite database 22
 - version requirements,
- Staging site 183
 - making, 182
 - overview,
- State 6
 - as a type of data, 228
 - definition,
- Status report 201
 - overview,
- Structure menu entry 35
 - administrative menu,
- Style 100, 101
 - image,
- Support 220
 - finding,
- T**
- Tagline 38
 - configuring,
- Taxonomy 83
 - creating, 229
 - definition, 81
 - overview,
- Taxonomy module 14
 - entity type,
- Taxonomy term 229
 - definition, 14
 - overview,
- Taxonomy term reference field 88
 - adding, 80
 - overview,

- Term (taxonomy)
 - fixed list, 81
 - free tagging, 84
 - overview, 81
- Term list 83
 - creating, 223
- Terminology (Glossary),
- Text format 107
 - configuring, 229
 - definition, 106
 - overview, 107
- Theme 47
 - configuring, 175
 - contributed, 4
 - core, 4, 175
 - custom, 229
 - definition, 175, 179, 186
 - downloading, 179
 - enabling, 172
 - evaluating, 172
 - finding, 175
 - installing, 4
 - overview, 11
 - regions in, 4
 - third-party, 215
 - updating, 4
- Third-party theme
 - overview, 4
- Time zone setting
 - configuring, 38
- Tool 23
 - Coder, 23
 - Composer, 23
 - Devel, 23
 - drupal console, 23
 - Drush, 23
 - Git, 23
- Toolbar 35
 - overview, 35
- Training 221
 - Global Training Days, 221
 - resource, 221
 - Training Marketplace, 221
- Translating 157
 - configuration, 157
 - content, 157
 - label, 149
 - overview, 157
 - view, 157
- Troubleshooting
 - log report, 201
 - status report, 200
- U**
- UI (User Interface)
 - definition, 229
- Uniform Resource Locator (URL)
 - overview, 52
- Uninstalling 41
 - unused modules, 41
- Unpublished flag
 - overview, 20
- Update 229
 - definition, 208
 - keeping track of, 208
 - overview, 201
 - status report, 201
- Update Manager module
 - overview, 169
 - using to install module, 175
 - using to install theme, 175
- Update status 201
 - status report, 201
- URL (Uniform Resource Locator)
 - overview, 52
- URL alias 52
 - overview, 52
- URL field 75
 - adding, 75
- Usage scenario for this document (farmers market),
- User 111
 - administrative, 111
 - configuring account setting, 44
 - creating account, 113
 - definition, 109
 - overview, 111
 - root, 111
 - user one, 111
- User account menu
 - overview, 61
- User group
 - finding, 218
- User interface
 - translating, 149
- User Interface (UI)
 - definition, 229
- User module

entity type, 14
 overview, 3
 User one, 229
 definition, 229
 User profile entity type, 14
 overview, 14
 User reference field, 88
 adding, 80
 overview, 88
 User role, 119
 changing, 112
 creating, 109
 overview, 109
 User-entered content, 106
 filtering, 106

V

View, 143
 adding block display to, 16
 and modular content, 132
 contextual filters part, 134
 creating, 230
 definition, 132
 display part, 138
 duplicating, 132
 fields part, 132
 filter criteria part, 132
 format part, 131
 overview, 132
 parts of, 132
 relationships part, 132
 sort criteria part, 137
 translating, 137

View mode, 230
 definition, 96
 overview, 96

Views module, 143
 adding to a view, 134
 creating a view, 138
 duplicating a view, 131
 overview, 16, 131

Views UI module, 3
 overview, 3

Vocabulary, 83
 creating, 230
 definition, 14, 81
 overview, 83

W

Web installer, 28
 running, 28
 using to install the core software, 25

Web server, 22
 installation requirements, 22

What You See Is What You Get (WYSIWYG), 107
 configuring editor, 230
 definition, 230

Widget, 226, 230
 definition, 91
 overview, 91

Wizard, 230
 definition, 230

WYSIWYG (What You See Is What You Get), 107
 configuring editor, 230
 definition, 230

X

XSS (Cross-site scripting), 106
 preventing, 106

همی مض A. تسویپ

A.1. Guide-Wide Attributions

This guide was written by contributors to the Drupal open-source project, and is licensed under the [CC BY-SA 2.0](#) license. See [#### i.1, "#### #####"](#) for more information. Details

about the contributors for guide-wide tasks are below. For individual topics, the attributions for writing, editing, and/or translating are at the end of each topic.

Project coordination of original (English, Drupal 8) text

Writing of the initial version of this guide was coordinated by the following people:

- [Amber Matz](#) - Volunteer coordination and project management
- [Jennifer Hodgdon](#) - Content oversight
- [Joe Shindelar](#) - Content oversight
- [Antje Lorch](#) - Content oversight

Writing, editing, and testing of original text

The following people contributed to guide-wide writing:

- The glossary was written and adapted by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#), with parts from "[Glossary](#)", "[Overview of Configuration \(vs. other types of information\)](#)", and "[Working with breakpoints in Drupal 8](#)", each copyright 2000-2016 by the individual contributors to the [Drupal Community Documentation](#).
- The index was improved and curated by [Anna van Raaphorst](#).
- Topic summaries were written by [Jojoy Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#).

Guide-wide editing was done by the following people:

- [Amber Matz](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#)

- [Anna van Raaphorst](#)
- [Antje Lorch](#)
- [Balu Ertl](#)
- [Boris Doesborg](#)
- [Charles Leverington](#)
- [chirag shah](#)
- [Grant Dunham](#)
- [Jennifer Hodgdon](#)
- [Joe Shindelar](#) at [Drupalize.Me](#)
- [Joey Alphonso](#) at [Red Crackle](#) — who copy edited the vast majority of the User Guide
- [Kamal Kant Pansari](#) at [Intelliswift](#)
- [Michael Lenahan](#) at [erdfisch](#)
- [Swarad Mokal](#) at [Blisstering Solutions](#)

The content was tested by:

- [Zach Carter](#)
- A workshop organized by the "[Spokane Drupal User Group](#)" on [groups.drupal.org](#), with students from the Web Development Certificate program at [Spokane Community College](#)

Images

Most of the images in the guide are screen captures from the Drupal software, generated by software written by [Jennifer Hodgdon](#).

The word Drupal, the Druplicon logo (which appears as part of several images throughout the guide), and the Drupal wordmark logo (which is part of the cover image), are [registered trademarks of Dries Buytaert](#).

The cover image is a CC BY-SA 2.0 licensed illustration by [Amanda Luker](#) at [Advomatic](#).

The Anytown Farmers Market logo, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a CC BY-SA 2.0 licensed illustration by Justin Harrell at [Drupalize.Me](#).

The honey bee image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a public domain image by [John Severns](#) at the [English Wikipedia project](#) via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

The farm image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a public domain image by Xianmin Chang via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

The salad image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is a public domain image by [Yinan Chen](#) via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

The carrot image, which appears as part of several images throughout the guide, is public domain image [K11611-1](#) by Stephen Ausmus at the [Agricultural Research Service of the United States Department of Agriculture](#) via [Wikimedia Commons](#).

Translation into Persian

The Persian translation of this guide was coordinated by:

- [Navid Emami](#)